Configuration and Use Manual
MS-00809-0100-5710, Rev AA
October 2023

Micro Motion™ 4700 Transmitters with Configurable Inputs and Outputs

Configuration and Use Manual

Safety messages

Safety messages are provided throughout this manual to protect personnel and equipment. Read each safety message carefully before proceeding to the next step.

Safety and approval information

This Micro Motion product complies with all applicable European directives when properly installed in accordance with the instructions in this manual. Refer to the EU Declaration of Conformity for directives that apply to this product. The following are available: the EU Declaration of Conformity, with all applicable European directives, and the complete ATEX installation drawings and instructions. In addition, the IECEx installation instructions for installations outside of the European Union and the CSA installation instructions for installations in North America are available at Emerson.com or through your local Micro Motion support center.

Other information

Troubleshooting information can be found in the appropriate Configuration and Use Manual. Product data sheets and manuals are available from the Micro Motion website at Emerson.com.

Return policy

Follow Micro Motion procedures when returning equipment. These procedures ensure legal compliance with government transportation agencies and help provide a safe working environment for Micro Motion employees. If you fail to follow Micro Motion procedures, then Micro Motion will not accept your returned equipment.

Return procedures and forms are available on our web support site at Emerson.com, or by calling the Micro Motion Customer Service department.

Contents

1 Before you begin

1.1 About this manual

This manual helps you configure, commission, use, maintain, and troubleshoot Micro Motion 4700 transmitters.

Important
This manual assumes that:

- The transmitter has been installed correctly and completely according to the instructions in the transmitter installation manual.
- Users understand basic transmitter and sensor installation, configuration, and maintenance concepts and procedures.

1.2 Hazard messages

This document uses the following criteria for hazard messages based on ANSI standards Z535.6-2011 (R2017).

DANGER
Serious injury or death will occur if a hazardous situation is not avoided.

WARNING
Serious injury or death could occur if a hazardous situation is not avoided.

CAUTION
Minor or moderate injury will or could occur if a hazardous situation is not avoided.

NOTICE
Data loss, property damage, hardware damage, or software damage can occur if a situation is not avoided. There is no credible risk of physical injury.

Physical access

WARNING
Unauthorized personnel can potentially cause significant damage and/or misconfiguration of end users' equipment. Protect against all intentional or unintentional unauthorized use.

Physical security is an important part of any security program and fundamental to protecting your system. Restrict physical access to protect users' assets. This is true for all systems used within the facility.

1.3 Safety Messages

WARNING

Failure to comply with requirements for intrinsic safety in a hazardous area could result in an explosion causing death or serious injury.

Meter installation and wiring should be performed only by suitably-trained personnel using the appropriate government and corporate safety standards.

To prevent ignition of flammable or combustible atmospheres, ensure that all covers and seals are tightly closed. For hazardous area installations, applying power while housing covers are removed or loose can cause an explosion.

If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, wait five minutes after disconnecting the power. Failure to do so could result in an explosion causing death or injury.

If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not reapply power to the transmitter with the housing cover removed. Reapplying power to the transmitter while the housing cover is removed could cause an explosion.

ELECTRIC SHOCK HAZARD: Power off before lifting unit

CAUTION

Installing the transmitter with the conduit openings or transmitter display facing upward risks condensation moisture entering the transmitter housing, which could damage the transmitter.

Do not rotate the housing more than 360°. Excessive rotation can damage the wiring and cause measurement error or flow meter failure.

Ensure that the connection between the transmitter and the sensor is moisture-proof. Inspect and grease all gaskets and O-rings. Moisture in the electronics can cause measurement error or flow meter failure.

NOTICE

Improper grounding could cause inaccurate measurements or meter failure.

Do not use Discrete Output Source as a fault indicator. If you do, you may not be able to distinguish a fault condition from a normal operating condition. If you want to use the Discrete Output as a fault indicator, see Fault indication with a Discrete Output.

1.4 Cybersecurity

1.4.1 Defense-in-depth strategy

Security capabilities

The 4700 transmitter has several features that can help to protect it against either intentional or unintentional access and configuration changes. For each input and output, the secure set up is described:

- Configuration Audit Trail log stored by the system (refer to Generate service files)
- 4700 signed firmware (refer to Upgrade the transmitter firmware)
- Write protect physical lock switch (refer to Configure security for the display)
- If the Bluetooth option is ordered, the system includes:
  — Device allowing only one Bluetooth connection at a time.
  — System containing Administrator and Operator role-based permissions for the Bluetooth connection

- — Passcode requirements on the application to connect to Bluetooth and for each configuration role
- — Encrypted communications
- — Encrypted and signed firmware updates
- — Unique session keys

Mitigation strategies

Any device in the field is prone to a physical attack, which must be mitigated by physical security controls. If a device can access the worldwide internet, then it can be discoverable by malicious actors. As a result, field devices must be in a dedicated and actively-managed network. If an input or an output is described as insecure, it means that it is unencrypted (available in clear text) and does not have access control capabilities (for example there is no way to tell who is communicating with the transmitter).

The following are inputs and outputs of the device that can be utilized for the 4700 device.

Note
If a protocol is licensed, you must call support to have it disabled. If a protocol is not licensed, it is disabled. (Refer to View the licensed features (optional)).

- Local interface (LOI) – four-character passcode (refer to Configure security for the display)
- USB service port – disable option (refer to Disable USB-A service port)
- For the inputs and outputs available on this transmitter with different channels, refer to Rules for channel combinations.
- Both HART and RS-485 Modbus are inherently insecure protocols. As a result, Emerson recommends using these protocols while the transmitter is within a physically secure environment, according to a company's security policy
- Bluetooth®: If the Bluetooth option is ordered, the 4700 is shipped with Bluetooth enabled by default. Emerson recommends disabling Bluetooth when not in use to reduce attack surfaces. (refer to Disabling Bluetooth®)

The physical write protect switch controls all the interfaces. The physical write protect (dip) switch is located behind the display. More information can be found in Security and write protection.

Security defense-in-depth measures

The device is not intended to be directly connected to an enterprise or to an internet-facing network without a compensating control in place. Do not connect the device without mitigation measures in place.

1.4.2 Security hardening guidelines

Product integration

The device has optional applications for configuration and data viewing. When such applications are used, they must run on devices that are configured according to the security policy of the company using the device.

Defense-in-depth strategy

This transmitter device has been developed using secure coding principals and procedures, including threat modeling and security specific testing. It has several interfaces developed using the Secure Development Lifecycle (SDL), according to IEC 62443-4-1, which is the recognized standard for the oil and gas, and manufacturing industries.

Configuring the device

There are multiple ways to configure the 4700 device securely including:

Issue:	Local display allows the user a default passcode that is known publicly. Anyone in physical proximity to the device could log into it. **Note** The local display has only has one access role, unlike the three roles for Bluetooth® configuration (Factory Admin, Administrator, and Maintenance). For the specific Bluetooth roles, refer to Account permissions.
Resolution:	Change the passcode upon the first use and do not share passcodes.

Issue:	Bluetooth provides a wireless connection to the device for configuration. This connection can present a significant risk to the device, therefore Emerson recommends disabling this option, if it is not needed. If the Bluetooth connection is used, Emerson recommends providing mitigating physical controls. Refer to Mitigation strategies.
Resolution:	Bluetooth connectivity works best at a ~ 50 ft (~18m) range, but can still connect up to a distance of ~175 ft (~55m). To avoid wireless attacks, Emerson recommends providing physical security mitigations within the radius of ~175 ft (~55m). When not needed, Emerson recommends disabling the Bluetooth. Refer to Disabling Bluetooth®.

Issue:	The USB service port is enabled by default. If a malicious actor has a physical access to the device, then they can install unauthorized software.
Resolution:	Emerson recommends disabling this option when not needed and operating the device within a secure physical environment (refer to Disable USB-A service port).

Defaults

If the customer orders the Bluetooth ® option, the 4700 will be shipped with Bluetooth enabled by default. Emerson recommends disabling Bluetooth when not in use to reduce the attack surface.

This transmitter is equipped with a Universal Service Port that works with USB type A connections, including compatible flash drives. There are multiple levels of security built into the transmitter service port that you can configure according to your needs and security standards.

The service port offers the following features that enhance interface security:

- The service port is inaccessible without physical access to the transmitter and requires removal of the terminal cover.
- The service port can be disabled from the transmitter through software (refer to Disable USB-A service port).
- The transmitter has a non-traditional operating system that is neither designed to execute programs nor to run scripts.
- The display can be passcode protected to limit access to the USB file menu.
- Overall transmitter security switches such as the write protect (dip) switch disallows configuration changes from all interfaces, including the Universal Service Port. More information can be found in Security and write protection.

This transmitter is :

- Designed to be implemented in an industrial automation control system (Level 1 of the Purdue Reference Architecture Model), with defense-in-depth security controls.
- Not intended to be directly connected to an enterprise or to an internet-facing network without a compensating control in place.

1.4.3 Secure operation guidelines

Operation of product

Best practices of product operation:

- Operate the device within a controlled and secured physical environment.
- Operate the device within a controlled and secured network environment.
- Manage all the accounts on the device according to the security policy of your company.

Reporting security vulnerabilities

Use Report a Vulnerability on Emerson.com for reporting vulnerabilities back to Emerson.

Best security practices

Best practices of product operation:

- Do not connect the device to the worldwide net.
- Apply security patches and updates as they are released. Maintain power to the device during the entire firmware update.
- Change the passcodes frequently (at least once a month).
- When entering the local display passcode, ensure no one else can view the passcode.
- Do not share passcodes or other protected information.
- Do not share the admin passcode.
- If not used, disable Bluetooth® (refer to Disabling Bluetooth®).
- For the Bluetooth configuration, use longer passcodes with special characters.

1.4.4 Bluetooth® account management guidelines

Account permissions

The Bluetooth® subsystem supports three different account types that can establish an authenticated connection. Different command permissions are associated with each account type. As such, each command defines the allowed user type that can execute that command

- The Factory Admin role can:
  - Reset security
  - Read and write all configurations
  - Establish Admin and Maintenance accounts
- The Administrator role can:
  - Read and write all configurations
  - Change the Admin passcode
  - Establish Maintenance Account
- The Maintenance role can:
  - Read and write all configurations
  - Change Maintenance passcode

To enable the Admin and Maintenance accounts, connect to the device with the Emerson Mobile App with the Factory Default pre-shared key (PSK) credentials and use the app to establish Admin and Maintenance passcodes. The device unique identifier and passcode can be found in three locations (refer to Bluetooth® UID and key):

- The temporary tag on the outside of the device
- The label inside the terminal cover
- On the display inside the device

The Maintenance role cannot disable the Factory Admin role, but it can disable the Administrator and Maintenance roles. To disable either the Admin or the Maintenance role, a user connects to the device with the Emerson AMS Device Configurator App with the Factory Default PSK and Unique Identifier (UID).

There are two ways to recover a lost passcode:

1. If the Factory Default PSK account has not been disabled, a user can obtain the Factory Default PSK from a label on the transmitter. The user can log in with the Factory Default PSK and change the Admin or Maintenance passcode.
2. If the Factory Default PSK account has been disabled, a user can reset the security, which will enable the Factory PSK account and then follow the steps above.
   To reset the security, a user needs to do the following:
   a. Use either the local display or ProLink™ III to connect a HART® device to the mA output.
   b. Navigate to the **Reset Security** screen.
   c. Enable reset mode with the HART device, which provides 15 minutes to then use the Emerson Bluetooth Mobile App to connect to the Factory Default PSK account.

Default passcode instructions

- At first use of the device, change the default passcodes.
  The default passcode is provisioned for all devices and is public knowledge, which makes it possible for a malicious actor to log into the device.
- ProLink™ III, HART®, and Bluetooth® can be used to enable security on the local display (Configure security for the display). At that time, the local display passcode can also be changed.
- For the Bluetooth® connection, the Admin and User accounts are initially disabled and do not have default passcodes. When a user enables those accounts, a passcode is established.

Important
The Factory Default PSK cannot be changed on the device.

1.4.5 Secure product disposal guidelines

Instructions for product removal

When the device needs to be disposed of, consider the following aspects of device removal:

- Identify whether the device can be reused in another part of the process for either testing or training purposes.
- Identify what data is stored on the device and sanitize this data using your organization's security policy. Consider restoring your factory configuration (see Restore the factory configuration).
  — Verify that the local display passcode is set to the default “AAAA".
  — If the product has a Bluetooth option, reset the Bluetooth security prior to disposal (see either Reset the Bluetooth® key or Reset Bluetooth® security using a wired connection).

- If the device is ready for disposal, then it can be discarded or physically destroyed using your organization's security policy.

1.5 Related documentation

See the approval documentation shipped with the transmitter, or download the appropriate documentation from the Micro Motion web site (www.emerson.com/flowmeasurement):

- Micro Motion 4700 Configurable Inputs and Outputs Transmitter: Installation Manual
- *Micro Motion 4700 Configurable Inputs and Outputs Transmitter; Product Data Sheet*
- *Micro Motion ProLink III with ProcessViz Software User Manual*
- *Coriolis Flow Meter with Micro Motion 4700 Configurable Inputs and Outputs Transmitter: Safety Manual for Safety Instrumented Systems (SIS)*
- Sensor installation manual, shipped with the sensor
- FMEDA report for Coriolis Flow Meter with 4700 Transmitter, prepared for Emerson by exida.com LLC

1.6 Installation types

The 4700 transmitter was ordered and shipped for one of three installation types. The fifth character of the transmitter number indicates the installation type.

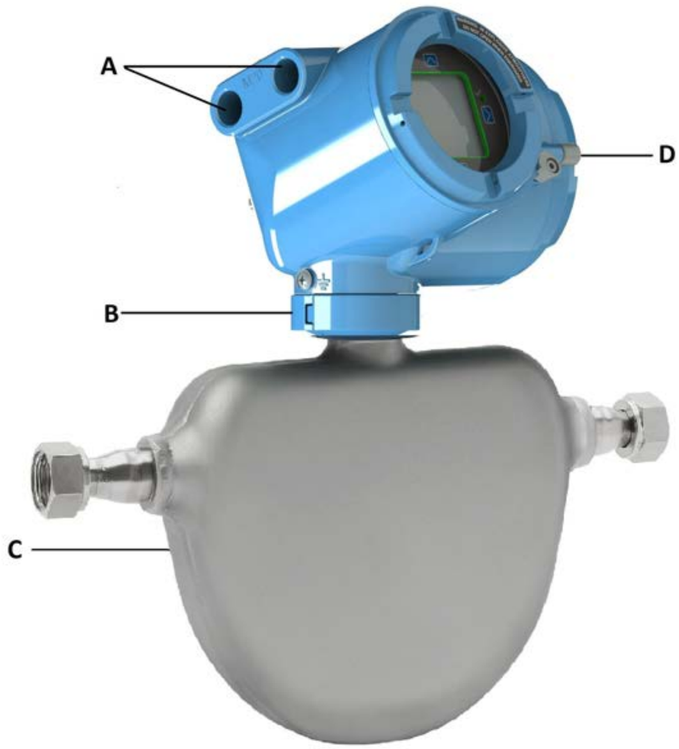
Figure 1-1: Installation type indication for 4700 transmitters

The number is located on the device tag on the side of the transmitter.

Table 1-1: Installation types for 4700 transmitters

Code	Description
I	Integral mount painted aluminum
R	Remote mount 4-wire
C	Remote mount 9-wire

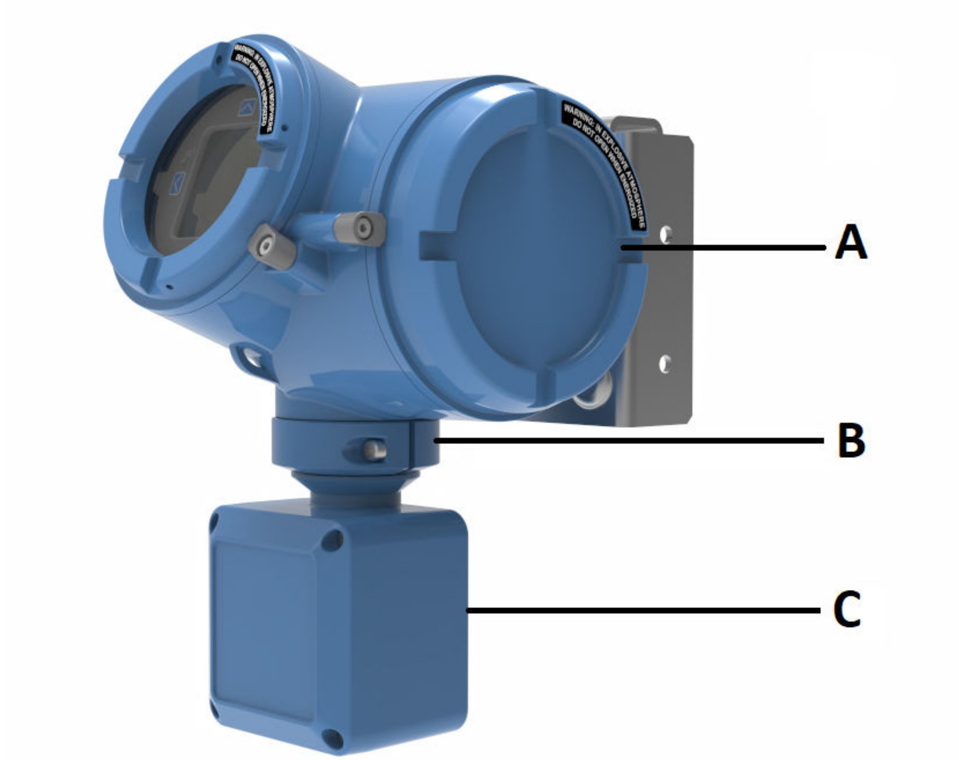
Figure 1-2: 4700 transmitter painted aluminum -- Integral mount



A. Conduit openings
B. Clamping ring
C. Sensor case
D. Transmitter housing cover (hidden from view)

The transmitter is installed directly on the sensor.

Figure 1-3: 4700 transmitter painted aluminum -- Remote mount



A. *Transmitter housing cover*
B. *Clamping ring*
C. *Junction box*

The transmitter is installed remotely from the sensor. Both the 4-wire and the 9-wire connection between the sensor and transmitter must be field wired.

For both integral mount and remote mount:

- The power supply and I/O must be field wired to the transmitter
- The I/O connections consist of three licensable channels (refer to Rules for channel combinations).

1.7 Communication tools and protocols

You can use several different communications tools and protocols to interface with the transmitter, use different tools in different locations, or use different tools for different tasks.

Tool	Supported protocols
Display	Available with Bluetooth® locally at display, or an optional Bluetooth-enabled display: Configure via Bluetooth® wireless technology.

Tool	Supported protocols
ProLink™ III	• HART • HART®/Bell 202 • HART®/RS-485 • Modbus® /RS-485 • Service Port (USB-A)
Field communicator	HART/Bell 202

For information about how to use the communication tools, see the appendices in this manual.

Note
Some configuration and administrative procedures can be performed through the display menus. However, for complete access to transmitter functions, Micro Motion recommends setting up and using an administrative connection.

Tip
You may be able to use other communications tools, such as AMS™ Suite: Intelligent Device Manager, or the Smart Wireless THUM™ Adapter. Use of AMS or the Smart Wireless THUM Adapter is not discussed in this manual. For more information on the Smart Wireless THUM Adapter, refer to the documentation available at Emerson.com.

2 Quick start

2.1 Applying power

The transmitter must be powered up for all configuration and commissioning tasks or for process measurement.

Procedure

1. Verify that the cables are connected to the transmitter as described in the installation manual.
2. Verify that all transmitter and sensor covers and seals are closed.

   WARNING

   To prevent ignition of flammable or combustible atmospheres, ensure that all covers and seals are tightly closed. For hazardous area installations, applying power while housing covers are removed or loose can cause an explosion.

3. Turn on the electrical power at the power supply.
   The transmitter will automatically perform diagnostic routines. During this period, the `Transmitter Initializing` alert is active. The diagnostic routines should complete in approximately 30 seconds.

Postrequisites

Although the sensor is ready to receive process fluid shortly after power-up, the electronics can take up to 10 minutes to reach thermal equilibrium. Therefore, if this is the initial startup, or if power has been off long enough to allow components to reach ambient temperature, allow the electronics to warm up for approximately 10 minutes before relying on process measurements. During this warm-up period, you may observe minor measurement instability or inaccuracy.

When the flow meter has completed its power-up sequence, if the default settings are in effect:

- The display will show the current mass flow rate and measurement unit.
- If there are any active fault or informational alarms, the alert banner displays until the alert has been manually acknowledged.
- If the alert has been acknowledged but is still active, the alert icon displays above the menu button, and the **Alert List** menu appears at the top of the main menu.

2.2 Check meter status

Check the meter for any error conditions that require user action or that affect measurement accuracy.

Procedure

Wait approximately 10 seconds for the power-up sequence to complete.

Immediately after power-up, the transmitter runs through diagnostic routines and checks for error conditions. During the power-up sequence, the `Transmitter Initializing` alert is active. This alert should clear automatically when the power-up sequence is complete.

2.3 Commissioning wizards

The transmitter menu includes a *Guided Setup* to help you move quickly through the most common configuration parameters. ProLink III also provides a commissioning wizard.

By default, when the transmitter starts up, the Guided Setup menu is offered. You can choose to use it or not. You can also choose whether or not Guided Setup is displayed automatically.

- To enter Guided Setup:
  — During transmitter setup, choose **Yes** at the prompt.
  — After transmitter setup, **Menu** → **Startup Tasks**
- To control the automatic display of Guided Setup, choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Guided Setup**.

For information on the ProLink III commissioning wizard, see the Micro Motion ProLink III with ProcessViz Software User Manual.

As the commissioning wizards are self guided, they are not documented in detail.

2.4 Make a startup connection to the transmitter

For all configuration tools except the display, you must have an active connection to the transmitter to configure the transmitter.

Procedure

Identify the connection type to use, and follow the instructions for that connection type in the appropriate appendix.

Communications tool	Connection type to use	Instructions
ProLink III	HART®	Using ProLink III with the transmitter
Field communicator	HART	Using a field communicator with the transmitter

2.5 Set the transmitter clock

Display	**Menu** → **Configuration** → **Time/Date/Tag**
ProLink III	**Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Transmitter Clock**
Field communicator	**Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Clock**

The transmitter clock provides timestamp data for alerts, service logs, history logs, and all other timers and dates in the system. You can set the clock for your local time or for any standard time you want to use.

Note
You may find it convenient to set all of your transmitter clocks to the same time, even if the transmitters are in different time zones.
To aid in record keeping convenience, set transmitter clocks located in different time zones to the same time.

Procedure

1. Select the time zone that you want to use.
2. If you need a custom time zone, select **Special Time Zone** and enter your time zone as a difference from UTC (Coordinated Universal Time).
3. Set the time appropriately.

Note
The transmitter does not adjust for Daylight Savings Time. If you observe Daylight Savings Time, you must reset the transmitter clock manually.

---

4. Set the month, day, and year.

   The transmitter tracks the year and automatically adds a day for leap years.

2.6 View the licensed features (optional)

Display	**Menu → About → Licenses → Licensed Features**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Device Information → Licensed Features**
Field communicator	**Overview → Device Information → Licenses**

The transmitter license controls the features that are enabled on the transmitter, including both software applications and I/O channels. You can view the licensed features to ensure that the transmitter was ordered with the required features.

Licensed features are purchased and available for permanent use. The options model code represents the licensed features.

A trial license allows you to explore features before purchasing. The trial license enables the specified features for a limited number of days. This number is displayed for reference. At the end of this period, the feature will no longer be available.

To purchase additional features or request a trial license, either write down or record the Unique ID Number and current license key from your transmitter and then contact customer service. To enable the additional features or trial license, you will need to install the new license on the transmitter.

2.7 Set informational parameters

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Device Information**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Informational Parameters**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Device**

You can set several parameters that identify or describe the transmitter and sensor. These parameters are not used in processing and are not required.

Procedure

1. Set informational parameters for the transmitter.
   a) Set **Transmitter Serial Number** to the serial number of your transmitter.

      The transmitter serial number is provided on the metal tag that is attached to the transmitter housing.

   b) Set **Descriptor** to any desired description of this transmitter or measurement point.
   c) Set **Message** to any desired message.
   d) Verify that **Model Code (Base)** is set to the base model code of the transmitter.

      The base model code completely describes your transmitter, except for the features that can be licensed independently. The base model code is set at the factory.

e) Set **Model Code (Options)** to the options model code of the transmitter.

The options model code describes the independent features that have been licensed for this transmitter. The original options model code is set at the factory. If you license additional options for this transmitter, Emerson will supply an updated options model code.

For a field communicator, configuring model code options is not available for this release.

2. Set informational parameters for the sensor.
    a) Set **Sensor Serial Number** to the serial number of the sensor connected to this transmitter.

    The sensor serial number is provided on the metal tag that is attached to the sensor case.

    b) Set **Sensor Material** to the material used for the sensor.
    c) Set **Sensor Liner** to the material used for the sensor liner, if any.
    d) Set **Flange Type** to the type of flange that was used to install the sensor.

Sensor Type is set or derived during characterization.

2.8 Characterize the meter (if required)

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Sensor Parameters**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Calibration Data**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Characterization**

Characterizing the meter adjusts your transmitter to match the unique traits of the sensor it is paired with. The characterization parameters (also called calibration parameters) describe the sensor's sensitivity to flow, density, and temperature. Depending on your sensor type, different parameters are required.

Values for your sensor are provided on the sensor tag or the calibration certificate.

If your transmitter was ordered with a sensor, it was characterized at the factory. However, you should still verify the characterization parameters.

The 4700 will automatically select sensor type based on the entered sensor parameters.

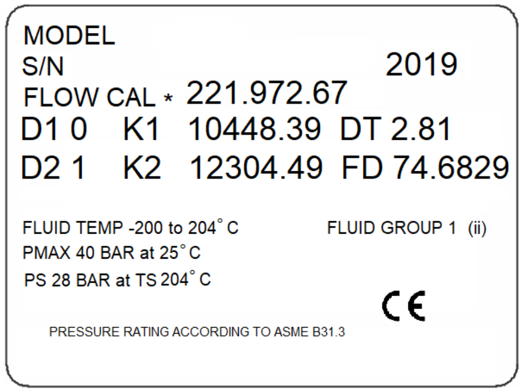
Note
Unlike earlier transmitters, the 4700 derives the sensor type from the user-specified values for FCF and K1 in combination with an internal ID.

Procedure

1. Set the flow calibration factor: **FCF** (also called **Flow Cal** or **Flow Calibration Factor**). Be sure to include all decimal points.
2. Set the density characterization parameters: **D1**, **D2**, **TC**, **K1**, **K2**, and **FD**. (**TC** is sometimes shown as **DT**.)
3. Apply the changes as required by the tool you are using.
The transmitter identifies your sensor type, and characterization parameters are adjusted as required:
    - If **Sensor Type** changed from Straight Tube to Curved Tube, five characterization parameters are removed from the list.
    - If **Sensor Type** did not change, the list of characterization parameters does not change.

2.8.1 Sample sensor tags

Figure 2-1: Tag on newer curved-tube sensors (all sensors except T-Series)



2.8.2 Flow calibration parameters (FCF, FT)

Two separate values are used to describe flow calibration: a 6-character FCF value and a 4-character FT value. They are provided on the sensor tag.

Both values contain decimal points. During characterization, these are entered as a single 10-character string. The 10-character string is called either **Flowcal** or **FCF**.

If your sensor tag shows the **FCF** and the **FT** values separately and you need to enter a single value, concatenate the two values to form the single parameter value, retaining both decimal points.

Concatenating FCF and FT

```
FCF = x.xxxx FT = y.yy Flow calibration parameter: x.xxxxy.yy
```

2.8.3 Density calibration parameters (D1, D2, K1, K2, FD, DT, TC)

Density calibration parameters are typically on the sensor tag and the calibration certificate.

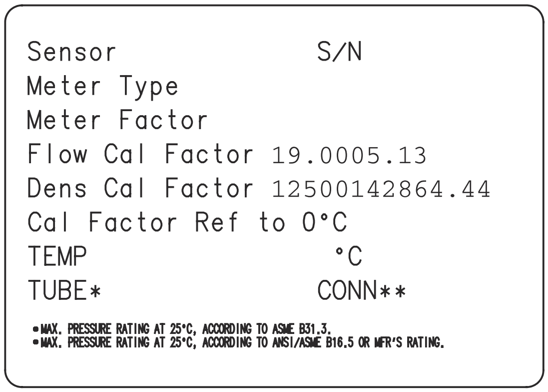
If your sensor tag does not show a D1 or D2 value:

- For **D1**, enter the Dens A or **D1** value from the calibration certificate. This value is the line-condition density of the low-density calibration fluid. Micro Motion uses air. If you cannot find a Dens A or **D1** value, enter `0.001` g/cm^3.
- For **D2**, enter the Dens B or **D2** value from the calibration certificate. This value is the line-condition density of the high-density calibration fluid. Micro Motion uses water. If you cannot find a Dens B or **D2** value, enter `0.998` g/cm^3 .

If your sensor tag does not show a K1 or K2 value:

- For **K1**, enter the first five digits of the density calibration factor. In this sample tag, this value is shown as 12500.
- For **K2**, enter the second five digits of the density calibration factor. In this sample tag, this value is shown as 14286.

Figure 2-2: K1, K2, and TC values in the density calibration factor



If your sensor does not show an **FD** value, contact customer service.

If your sensor tag does not show a **DT** or **TC** value, enter the last four characters of the density calibration factor. In the sample tag shown above, the value is shown as 4.44.

Do not confuse the **Meter Factor** line on the pictured sensor tag with any meter factor settings discussed in this manual.

2.9 Verify mass flow measurement

Check to see that the mass flow rate reported by the transmitter is accurate. You can use any available method.

Procedure

- Read the value for **Mass Flow Rate** on the transmitter display, which is the default initial display.
- Connect to the transmitter with ProLink III and read the value for **Mass Flow Rate** in the ***Process Variables*** panel.
- Connect to the transmitter with a field communicator and read the value for **Mass Flow Rate**.

Postrequisites

If the reported mass flow rate is not accurate:

- Check the characterization parameters.
- Review the troubleshooting suggestions for flow measurement issues.

2.10 Verify the zero

Display	**Menu → Service Tools → Verification & Calibration → Meter Zero → Zero Verification**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Calibration → Smart Zero Verification and Calibration → Verify Zero**
Field communicator	**Service Tools → Maintenance → Calibration → Zero Calibration → Perform Zero Verify**

Verifying the zero helps you determine if the stored zero value is appropriate to your installation, or if a field zero can improve measurement accuracy.

Important
In most cases, the factory zero is more accurate than the field zero. Do not zero the meter unless one of the following is true:

- The zero is required by site procedures.
- The stored zero value fails the zero verification procedure.

Do not verify the zero or zero the meter if a high-severity alert is active. Correct the problem, then verify the zero or zero the meter. You may verify the zero or zero the meter if a low-severity alert is active.

Procedure

1. Prepare the meter:
    a) Allow the meter to warm up for at least 20 minutes after applying power.
    b) Run the process fluid through the sensor until the sensor temperature reaches the normal process operating temperature.
    c) Stop flow through the sensor by shutting the downstream valve, and then the upstream valve if available.
    d) Verify that the sensor is blocked in, that flow has stopped, and that the sensor is completely full of process fluid.
2. Start the zero verification procedure, and wait until it completes.
3. If the zero verification procedure fails:
    a) Confirm that the sensor is completely blocked in, that flow has stopped, and that the sensor is completely full of process fluid.
    b) Verify that the process fluid is not flashing or condensing, and that it does not contain particles that can settle out.
    c) Repeat the zero verification procedure.
    d) If it fails again, zero the meter.

Postrequisites

Restore normal flow through the sensor by opening the valves.

Related information

Zero the meter

3 Introduction to configuration and commissioning

3.1 Security and write protection

The transmitter has several features that can help to protect it against intentional or unintentional access and configuration changes.

- When enabled, the software setting **Write Protection** prevents any configuration changes. When enabled, a lock icon displays at the top of the home screen of the display.
- When enabled, the display option **Display Security** prevents any configuration changes being made from the display unless the display passcode is entered. **Display Security** does not prevent configuration changes from other interfaces.
- If the Universal Service Port (USP) is disabled, the port (USB-A) cannot be used by any service tool to communicate with or make changes to the transmitter.

3.1.1 Enable or disable software write protection

When enabled, write protection prevents changes to the transmitter configuration. You can perform all other functions, and you can view the transmitter configuration parameters.

Write protection is enabled by toggling the physical write protect (dip) switch (identified by a lock icon) located behind the display module.

Figure 3-1: Write protect (dip) switch behind the display module

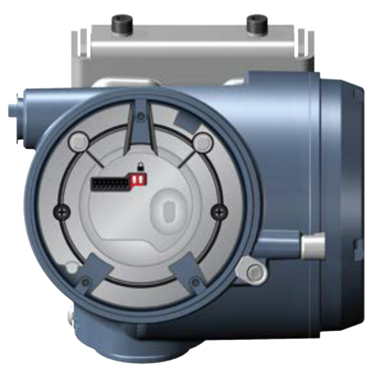


Figure 3-2: Write protect on the display (upper right corner)

You cannot change write protection from any host configuration tool.

Note
Write protecting the transmitter primarily prevents accidental changes to configuration, not intentional changes. Any user who can change the switch can disable write protection.

3.1.2 Configure security for the display

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Security → Display Security**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Transmitter Display → Display Security**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Display Menus**

When using the display, you can require users to enter a password to do any of the following tasks:

- Enter the main menu
- Change a parameter
- Access alert data through the display
- Start, stop, or reset totalizers or inventories via the context menu

The display password can be the same or different from the totalizer/inventory context menu control password. If different, the display password is used to reset, start, and stop totalizers or inventories using **Menu → Operations → Totalizers**.

Procedure

1. Configure **Password Required** as desired.

Option	Description
At Write	When an user chooses an action that leads to a configuration change, they are prompted to enter the display password.
Enter Menu	When the menu is selected from the process variable screen, the display password will be immediately required if **Password Required** is set.
Never (default)	When a user chooses an action that leads to a configuration change, they are prompted to enter a specific button sequence (⇦⇧⇩⇨). This is designed to protect against accidental changes to configuration. It is not a security measure.

2. If the **At Write** or **Enter Menu** option was selected, enable or disable alert security as desired.

Option	Description
Enabled	If an alert is active, the alert symbol ⓘ is shown in the upper right corner of the display but the alert banner is not displayed. If the operator attempts to enter the alert menu, they are prompted to enter the display password.
Disabled	If an alert is active, the alert symbol ⓘ is shown above the Menu button on the display but the alert banner is not displayed. No password or confirmation is required to enter the alert menu.

Restriction
You cannot set **Password Required** to **Never** and enable alert security.

- If you did not enable **Password Required**, alert security is disabled and cannot be enabled.
- Alert security is disabled automatically if you set **Password Required** to Never after:
  — **Password Required** is initially set to either At Write or Enter Menu.
  — Alert security is enabled.

3. If **Password Required** has been set to At Write or Enter Menu, you will be prompted to enter the desired password.
   - Default: AAAA
   - Range: Any four alphanumeric characters
   - **Password Required** must be set to At Write or Enter Menu to enable the totalizer/inventory control context menu password option.

Important
If you enable **Password Required** but you do not change the display password, the transmitter will post a configuration alert.

4. Configure **Main Menu Available** as desired.

Option	Description
Enabled	The local display **Menu** option from the process variable screen will be accessible.
Disabled	The local display **Menu** option from the process variable screen will not be accessible.

Important
Once **Main Menu Available** is disabled, it cannot be enabled from the local display. Use another configuration tool, such as ProLink III, to re-enable main menu access from the local display.

3.1.3 Disable USB-A service port

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Security → Service Port**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Transmitter Options**
Field communicator	**Device Settings → Security → Enable/Disable USB Port**

When using the display or ProLink III you can use the appropriate path to disable the USB-A service port:

Note
The USB service port can only be disabled when connected to Channel C (RS-485). In other instances, the path to disable will not be available.

Procedure

1. Disable the service port using the appropriate path for the device.
2. Once at the proper location, select Disable from the table below.

Option	Description
Enabled	The service port will remain enabled.
Disabled	The service port is disabled.

3.1.4 Disabling Bluetooth®

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Bluetooth Settings → Radio → Disable**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Communications → Communication (Bluetooth)**
Field communicator	**Device Settings → Communication → Bluetooth**

Bluetooth can be disabled by disabling the **Bluetooth Radio**.

Prerequisites

Ensure there is no active communication between the Bluetooth device and the transmitter.

Procedure

Disable the **Bluetooth Radio** using the paths described above, depending on the communications device used.

Important
Once **Bluetooth Radio** is disabled, it cannot be enabled from the local display. For instructions to reset Bluetooth security, refer to both Reset the Bluetooth® key and Reset Bluetooth® security using a wired connection, depending on the type of connection.

3.2 Work with configuration files

You can save the current transmitter configuration in two forms: a backup file and a replication file.

Tip
You can use a saved configuration file to change the nature of the transmitter quickly. This might be convenient if the transmitter is used for different applications or different process fluids.

Backup files	Contain all parameters. They are used to restore the current device if required. The `.spare` extension is used to identify backup files.
Replication files	Contain all parameters except the device-specific parameters, e.g., calibration factors or meter factors. They are used to replicate the transmitter configuration to other devices. The `.xfer` extension is used to identify replication files.

3.2.1 Save a configuration file using ProLink III

You can save the current transmitter configuration to your PC. The ProLink PC file format is supported.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration Transfer** → **Save Configuration**.
2. Select On my computer in ProLink III file format and click **Next**.
3. Select **Save**.
4. Select the configuration parameters to be included in this file.
   - To save a backup file, select all parameters.
   - To save a replication file, select all parameters except device-specific parameters.
5. Select Save.
6. Browse to the desired location, then enter the name for this configuration file.
7. Set the file type to ProLink configuration file.
8. Select Start Save.

   The configuration file is saved to the specified location as `yourname.pcfg`.

3.2.2 Load a configuration file using ProLink III

You can load a configuration file to the transmitter's working memory. The PC file formats are supported: the ProLink III PC file format is supported.

Note
When you use ProLink III format for configuration files, you can specify configuration parameters individually or by groups. Therefore, you can use this format for both backup and replication.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration Transfer** → **Load Configuration**.
2. Select On my computer in ProLink III file format and click **Next**.
3. Select the parameters that you want to load.
4. Select Load.
5. Set the file type to Configuration file.
6. Navigate to the file you want to load, and select it.
7. Select Start Load.

   The parameters are written to working memory, and the new settings become effectively immediately.

3.2.3 Restore the factory configuration

Display	**Menu** → **Configuration** → **Save/Restore Config** → **Restore Config from Memory** → **FactoryConfig**
ProLink III	**Device Tools** → **Configuration Transfer** → **Restore Factory Configuration**
Field communicator	**Service Tools** → **Maintenance** → **Reset/Restore** → **Restore Factory Configuration**

A file containing the factory configuration is always saved in the transmitter's internal memory and is available for use.

This action is typically used for error recovery or for repurposing a transmitter.

If you restore the factory configuration, the real-time clock, the audit trail, the historian, and other logs are not reset.

4 Configure process measurement

4.1 Configure Sensor Flow Direction Arrow

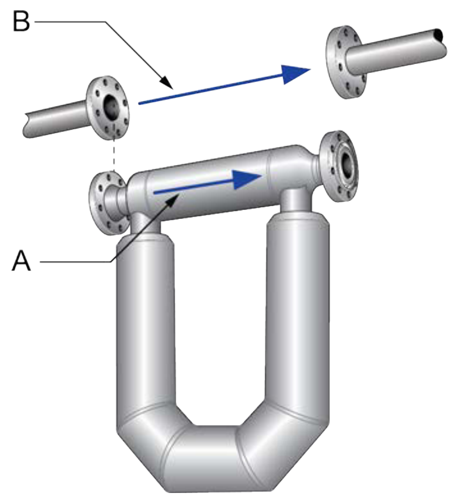
Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Flow Direction**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Flow → Sensor Direction**

Sensor Flow Direction Arrow is used to accommodate installations in which the Flow arrow on the sensor does not match the majority of the process flow. This typically happens when the sensor is accidentally installed backwards.

Sensor Flow Direction Arrow interacts with **mA Output Direction**, **Frequency Output Direction**, and **Totalizer Direction** to control how flow is reported by the outputs and accumulated by the totalizers and inventories.

Sensor Flow Direction Arrow also affects how flow is reported on the transmitter display and via digital communications. This includes ProLink III and a field communicator.

Figure 4-1: Flow arrow on sensor



A. Flow arrow
B. Actual flow direction

Procedure

Set **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** as appropriate.

Option	Description
With Arrow	The majority of flow through the sensor matches the flow arrow on the sensor. Actual forward flow is processed as forward flow.
Against Arrow	The majority of flow through the sensor is opposite to the flow arrow on the sensor. Actual forward flow is processed as reverse flow.

Tip
Micro Motion sensors are bidirectional. Measurement accuracy is not affected by actual flow direction or the setting of **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow**. **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** controls only whether actual flow is processed as forward flow or reverse flow.

4.2 Configure mass flow measurement

The mass flow measurement parameters control how mass flow is measured and reported. The mass total and mass inventory are derived from the mass flow data.

4.2.1 Configure Mass Flow Measurement Unit

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Mass Flow Settings → Units**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Mass Flow Rate Unit**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Flow → Mass Flow Unit**

Mass Flow Measurement Unit specifies the unit of measure that will be used for the mass flow rate. The default unit used for mass total and mass inventory is derived from this unit.

Procedure

Set **Mass Flow Measurement Unit** to the unit you want to use.

Default: g/sec (grams per second)

Tip
If the measurement unit you want to use is not available, you can define a special measurement unit.

Options for Mass Flow Measurement Unit

The transmitter provides a standard set of measurement units for **Mass Flow Measurement Unit**, plus one user-defined special measurement unit. Different communications tools may use different labels for the units.

Unit description	Label		
	Display	**ProLink III**	**Field communicator**
Grams per second	gram/s	g/sec	g/s
Grams per minute	gram/min	g/min	g/min
Grams per hour	gram/h	g/hr	g/h
Kilograms per second	kg/s	kg/sec	kg/s
Kilograms per minute	kg/min	kg/min	kg/min
Kilograms per hour	kg/h	kg/hr	kg/h
Kilograms per day	kg/d	kg/day	kg/d
Metric tons per minute	MetTon/min	mTon/min	MetTon/min
Metric tons per hour	MetTon/h	mTon/hr	MetTon/h
Metric tons per day	MetTon/d	mTon/day	MetTon/d
Pounds per second	lb/s	lbs/sec	lb/s
Pounds per minute	lb/min	lbs/min	lb/min
Pounds per hour	lb/h	lbs/hr	lb/h
Pounds per day	lb/d	lbs/day	lb/d

Unit description	Label		
	Display	ProLink III	Field communicator
Short tons (2000 pounds) per minute	STon/min	sTon/min	STon/min
Short tons (2000 pounds) per hour	STon/h	sTon/hr	STon/h
Short tons (2000 pounds) per day	STon/d	sTon/day	STon/d
Long tons (2240 pounds) per hour	LTon/h	lTon/hr	LTon/h
Long tons (2240 pounds) per day	LTon/d	lTon/day	LTon/d
Special unit	SPECIAL	Special	Special

Define a special measurement unit for mass flow

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Mass Flow Settings → Units → SPECIAL**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Mass Flow Rate Unit → Special**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → Special Units → Mass Special Units**

Procedure

1. Specify **Base Mass Unit**.
   Base Mass Unit is the existing mass unit that the special unit will be based on.
2. Specify **Base Time Unit**.
   Base Time Unit is the existing time unit that the special unit will be based on.
3. Calculate **Mass Flow Conversion Factor** as follows:
   a) x base units = y special units
   b) **Mass Flow Conversion Factor** = x ÷ y
4. Enter **Mass Flow Conversion Factor**.

   The original mass flow rate value is divided by this value.
5. Set **Mass Flow Label** to the name you want to use for the mass flow unit.
6. Set **Mass Total Label** to the name you want to use for the mass total and mass inventory unit.

The special measurement unit is stored in the transmitter. You can configure the transmitter to use the special measurement unit at any time.

Example: Defining a special measurement unit for mass flow

To measure mass flow in ounces per second (oz/sec):

1. Set **Base Mass Unit** to **Pounds (lb)**.
2. Set **Base Time Unit** to **Seconds (sec)**.
3. Calculate **Mass Flow Conversion Factor**:
   a. 1 lb/sec = 16 oz/sec
   b. **Mass Flow Conversion Factor** = 1 ÷ 16 = 0.0625
4. Set **Mass Flow Conversion Factor** to `0.0625`.
5. Set **Mass Flow Label** to `oz/sec`.

6. Set **Mass Total Label** to `oz`.

4.2.2 Configure Flow Damping

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Flow Damping**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Flow Rate Damping**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Flow → Flow Damping**

Flow Damping controls the amount of damping that will be applied to the measured mass flow rate. It affects flow rate process variables that are based on the measured mass flow rate. This includes volume flow rate and gas standard volume flow rate.

Flow Damping also affects specialized flow rate variables such as temperature-corrected volume flow rate (API Referral) and net mass flow rate (concentration measurement).

Damping is used to smooth out small, rapid fluctuations in process measurement. The damping value specifies the time period, in seconds, over which the transmitter will spread changes in the process variable. At the end of the interval, the internal value of the process variable (the damped value) will reflect 63% of the change in the actual measured value.

Procedure

Set **Flow Damping** to the value you want to use.

- Default: 0.64 seconds
- Range: 0 seconds to 60 seconds

Note
If a number greater than 60 is entered, it is automatically changed to 60.

Tip

- A high damping value makes the process variable appear smoother because the reported value changes slowly.
- A low damping value makes the process variable appear more erratic because the reported value changes more quickly.
- The combination of a high damping value and rapid, large changes in flow rate can result in increased measurement error.
- Whenever the damping value is non-zero, the reported measurement will lag the actual measurement because the reported value is being averaged over time.
- In general, lower damping values are preferable because there is less chance of data loss, and less lag time between the actual measurement and the reported value.
- The transmitter automatically rounds off any entered damping value to the nearest valid value. Therefore, the recommended damping value for gas applications should be 3.2 seconds. If you enter 2.56, the transmitter will round it off to 3.2.
- For filling applications, Emerson recommends using the default value of 0.04 seconds.

Effect of flow damping on volume measurement

Flow damping affects volume measurement for liquid volume data. Flow damping also affects volume measurement for gas standard volume data. The transmitter calculates volume data from the damped mass flow data.

Interaction between Flow Damping and mA Output Damping

In some circumstances, both **Flow Damping** and **mA Output Damping** are applied to the reported mass flow value.

Flow Damping controls the rate of change in flow process variables. **mA Output Damping** controls the rate of change reported through mA Output. If **mA Output Process Variable** is set to Mass Flow Rate, and both **Flow Damping** and **mA Output Damping** are set to non-zero values, flow damping is applied first, and the added damping calculation is applied to the result of the first calculation.

4.2.3 Configure Mass Flow Cutoff

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Mass Flow Settings → Low Flow Cutoff**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Mass Flow Cutoff**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Flow → Mass Flow Cutoff**

Mass Flow Cutoff specifies the lowest mass flow rate that will be reported as measured. All mass flow rates below this cutoff will be reported as 0.

Procedure

Set **Mass Flow Cutoff** to the value you want to use.

- Default: A sensor-specific value set at the factory. If your transmitter was ordered without a sensor, the default may be 0.0.
- Recommendation: 0.5% of maximum flow rate of the attached sensor. See the sensor specifications.

Important
Do not use your meter for measurement with **Mass Flow Cutoff** set to 0.0 g/sec. Ensure that **Mass Flow Cutoff** is set to the value that is appropriate for your sensor.

Effect of Mass Flow Cutoff on volume measurement

Mass Flow Cutoff does not affect volume measurement. Volume data is calculated from the actual mass data rather than the reported value.

Volume flow has a separate Volume Flow Cutoff that is not affected by the Mass Flow Cutoff value.

Interaction between Mass Flow Cutoff and mA Output Cutoff

Mass Flow Cutoff defines the lowest mass flow value that the transmitter will report as measured.
mA Output Cutoff defines the lowest flow rate that will be reported through mA Output. If **mA Output Process Variable** is set to Mass Flow Rate, the mass flow rate reported through mA Output is controlled by the higher of the two cutoff values.

Mass Flow Cutoff affects all reported values and values used in other transmitter behavior (e.g., events defined on mass flow).

mA Output Cutoff affects only mass flow values reported through mA Output.

Example: Cutoff interaction with mA Output Cutoff lower than Mass Flow Cutoff

Configuration:

- **mA Output Process Variable**: Mass Flow Rate
- **Frequency Output Process Variable**: Mass Flow Rate
- **mA Output Cutoff**: `10` g/sec
- **Mass Flow Cutoff**: `15` g/sec

Result: If the mass flow rate drops below 15 g/sec, mass flow will be reported as 0, and 0 will be used in all internal processing.

Example: Cutoff interaction with mA Output Cutoff higher than Mass Flow Cutoff

Configuration:

- **mA Output Process Variable**: Mass Flow Rate
- **Frequency Output Process Variable**: Mass Flow Rate
- **mA Output Cutoff**: `15` g/sec
- **Mass Flow Cutoff**: `10` g/sec

Result:

- If the mass flow rate drops below 15 g/sec but not below 10 g/sec:
  - The mA Output will report zero flow.
  - The Frequency Output will report the actual flow rate, and the actual flow rate will be used in all internal processing.
- If the mass flow rate drops below 10 g/sec, both outputs will report zero flow, and 0 will be used in all internal processing.

4.3 Configure volume flow measurement for liquid applications

The volume flow measurement parameters control how liquid volume flow is measured and reported. The volume total and volume inventory are derived from volume flow data.

Restriction
You cannot implement both liquid volume flow and gas standard volume flow at the same time. Choose one or the other.

Related information

Configure Volume Flow Type for liquid applications
Configure Volume Flow Measurement Unit for liquid applications
Configure Volume Flow Cutoff

4.3.1 Configure Volume Flow Type for liquid applications

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Flow Type → Liquid**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Volume Flow Type → Liquid Volume**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → GSV → Volume Flow Type → Liquid Volume**

Volume Flow Type controls whether liquid or gas standard volume flow measurement will be used.

Restriction
Gas standard volume measurement is incompatible with concentration measurement and API Referral applications. If you are using either of these applications, set **Volume Flow Type** to Liquid.

Procedure

Set **Volume Flow Type** to Liquid.

4.3.2 Configure Volume Flow Measurement Unit for liquid applications

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Units**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Volume Flow Rate Unit**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Flow → Volume Flow Unit**

Volume Flow Measurement Unit specifies the unit of measurement that will be displayed for the volume flow rate. The unit used for the volume total and volume inventory is based on this unit.

Prerequisites

Before you configure **Volume Flow Measurement Unit**, be sure that **Volume Flow Type** is set to **Liquid**.

Procedure

Set **Volume Flow Measurement Unit** to the unit you want to use.

Default: **l/sec (liters per second)**

Tip
If the measurement unit you want to use is not available, you can define a special measurement unit.

Options for Volume Flow Measurement Unit for liquid applications

The transmitter provides a standard set of measurement units for **Volume Flow Measurement Unit**, plus one user-defined measurement unit. Different communications tools may use different labels for the units.

Unit description	Label		
	Display	ProLink III	Field communicator
Cubic feet per second	ft3/s	ft3/sec	Cuft/s
Cubic feet per minute	ft3/min	ft3/min	Cuft/min
Cubic feet per hour	ft3/h	ft3/hr	Cuft/h
Cubic feet per day	ft3/d	ft3/day	Cuft/d
Cubic meters per second	m3/s	m3/sec	Cum/s
Cubic meters per minute	m3/min	m3/min	Cum/min
Cubic meters per hour	m3/h	m3/hr	Cum/h
Cubic meters per day	m3/d	m3/day	Cum/d
U.S. gallons per second	gal/s	US gal/sec	gal/s
U.S. gallons per minute	gal/m	US gal/min	gal/min
U.S. gallons per hour	gal/h	US gal/hr	gal/h
U.S. gallons per day	gal/d	US gal/day	gal/d

Unit description	Label		
	Display	ProLink III	Field communicator
Million U.S. gallons per day	MMgal/d	mil US gal/day	MMgal/d
Liters per second	L/s	l/sec	L/s
Liters per minute	L/min	l/min	L/in
Liters per hour	L/h	l/hr	L/h
Million liters per day	MML/d	mil l/day	ML/d
Imperial gallons per second	Impgal/s	Imp gal/sec	Impgal/s
Imperial gallons per minute	Impgal/m	Imp gal/min	Impgal/min
Imperial gallons per hour	Impgal/h	Imp gal/hr	Impgal/h
Imperial gallons per day	Impgal/d	Imp gal/day	Impgal/d
Barrels per second(1)	bbl/s	barrels/sec	bbl/s
Barrels per minute (1)	bbl/min	barrels/min	bbl/min
Barrels per hour (1)	bbl/h	barrels/hr	bbl/h
Barrels per day (1)	bbl/d	barrels/day	bbl/d
Beer barrels per second(2)	Beer bbl/s	Beer barrels/sec	Beer bbl/s
Beer barrels per minute(2)	Beer bbl/min	Beer barrels/min	Beer bbl/min
Beer barrels per hour (2)	Beer bbl/h	Beer barrels/hr	Beer bbl/h
Beer barrels per day (2)	Beer bbl/d	Beer barrels/day	Beer bbl/d
Special unit	SPECIAL	Special	Special

(1) *Unit based on oil barrels (42 U.S. gallons).*
(2) *Unit based on U.S. beer barrels (31 U.S. gallons).*

Define a special measurement unit for volume flow

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Units → SPECIAL**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Volume Flow Rate Unit → Special**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → Special Units → Volume Special Units**

A special measurement unit is a user-defined unit of measure that allows you to report process data, totalizer data, and inventory data in a unit that is not available in the transmitter. A special measurement unit is calculated from an existing measurement unit using a conversion factor.

Procedure

1. Specify **Base Volume Unit**.
   Base Volume Unit is the existing volume unit that the special unit will be based on.
2. Specify **Base Time Unit**.
   Base Time Unit is the existing time unit that the special unit will be based on.
3. Calculate **Volume Flow Conversion Factor** as follows:
   a) x base units = y special units

b) **Volume Flow Conversion Factor** = x ÷ y

4. Enter **Volume Flow Conversion Factor**.

   The original volume flow rate value is divided by this conversion factor.

5. Set **Volume Flow Label** to the name you want to use for the volume flow unit.
6. Set **Volume Total Label** to the name you want to use for the volume total and volume inventory unit.

The special measurement unit is stored in the transmitter. You can configure the transmitter to use the special measurement unit at any time.

Example: Defining a special measurement unit for volume flow

To measure volume flow in pints per second (pints/sec):

1. Set **Base Volume Unit** to **Gallons (gal)**.
2. Set **Base Time Unit** to **Seconds (sec)**.
3. Calculate the conversion factor:
   a. 1 gal/sec = 8 pints/sec
   b. **Volume Flow Conversion Factor** = 1 ÷ 8 = 0.1250
4. Set **Volume Flow Conversion Factor** to `0.1250`.
5. Set **Volume Flow Label** to `pints/sec`.
6. Set **Volume Total Label** to `pints`.

4.3.3 Configure Volume Flow Cutoff

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Low Flow Cutoff**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Volume Flow Cutoff**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Flow → Volume Flow Cutoff**

Volume Flow Cutoff specifies the lowest volume flow rate that will be reported as measured. All volume flow rates below this cutoff are reported as 0.

Procedure

Set **Volume Flow Cutoff** to the value you want to use.

- Default: **0.01/sec (liters per second)**
- Range: 0 l/sec to *x* l/sec, where *x* is the sensor's flow calibration factor, multiplied by 0.0002

Interaction between Volume Flow Cutoff and mAO Cutoff

Volume Flow Cutoff defines the lowest liquid volume flow value that the transmitter will report as measured. **mAO Cutoff** defines the lowest flow rate that will be reported through mA Output. If **mA Output Process Variable** is set to Volume Flow Rate, the volume flow rate reported through mA Output is controlled by the higher of the two cutoff values.

Volume Flow Cutoff affects both the volume flow values reported via the outputs and the volume flow values used in other transmitter behavior (e.g., events defined on the volume flow).

mAO Cutoff affects only flow values reported through mA Output.

Example: Cutoff interaction with mAO Cutoff lower than Volume Flow Cutoff

Configuration:

- **mA Output Process Variable**: Volume Flow Rate
- **Frequency Output Process Variable**: Volume Flow Rate
- **AO Cutoff**: `10` l/sec
- **Volume Flow Cutoff**: `15` l/sec

Result: If the volume flow rate drops below 15 l/sec, volume flow will be reported as 0, and 0 will be used in all internal processing.

Example: Cutoff interaction with mAO Cutoff higher than Volume Flow Cutoff

Configuration:

- **mA Output Process Variable**: Volume Flow Rate
- **Frequency Output Process Variable**: Volume Flow Rate
- **AO Cutoff**: `15` l/sec
- **Volume Flow Cutoff**: `10` l/sec

Result:

- If the volume flow rate drops below 15 l/sec but not below 10 l/sec:
  — The mA Output will report zero flow.
  — The Frequency Output will report the actual flow rate, and the actual flow rate will be used in all internal processing.
- If the volume flow rate drops below 10 l/sec, both outputs will report zero flow, and 0 will be used in all internal processing.

4.4 Configure Gas Standard Volume (GSV) flow measurement

The gas standard volume (GSV) flow measurement parameters control how gas standard volume flow is measured and reported.

Restriction
You cannot implement both liquid volume flow and gas standard volume flow at the same time. Choose one or the other.

4.4.1 Configure Volume Flow Type for gas applications

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Flow Type → Gas**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Volume Flow Type → Gas Standard Volume**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → GSV → Volume Flow Type → Standard Gas Volume**

Volume Flow Type controls whether liquid or gas standard volume flow measurement will be used.

Restriction
Gas standard volume measurement is incompatible with the following applications:

- API Referral
- Concentration measurement

For these applications, set **Volume Flow Type** to Liquid.

Procedure

Set **Volume Flow Type** to **Gas**.

4.4.2 Configure Standard Gas Density

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Standard Gas Density**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Standard Density of Gas**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → GSV → Gas Ref Density**

Standard Gas Density is the density of your gas at reference temperature and reference pressure. This is often called *standard density* or *base density*. It is used to calculate the GSV flow rate from the mass flow rate.

Procedure

Set **Standard Gas Density** to the density of your gas at reference temperature and reference pressure.

You can use any reference temperature and reference pressure that you choose. It is not necessary to configure these values in the transmitter.

Tip
ProLink III provides a guided method that you can use to calculate the standard density of your gas, if you do not know it.

4.4.3 Configure Gas Standard Volume Flow Measurement Unit

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Units**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Gas Standard Volume Flow Unit**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Flow → GSV Flow Unit**

Gas Standard Volume Flow Measurement Unit specifies the unit of measure that will be used for the gas standard volume (GSV) flow rate. The unit used for gas standard volume total and gas standard volume inventory is derived from this unit.

Prerequisites

Before you configure **Gas Standard Volume Flow Measurement Unit**, be sure that **Volume Flow Type** is set to Gas Standard Volume.

Procedure

Set **Gas Standard Volume Flow Measurement Unit** to the unit you want to use.

Default: SCFM (Standard Cubic Feet per Minute)

Tip
If the measurement unit you want to use is not available, you can define a special measurement unit.

Options for Gas Standard Volume Flow Measurement Unit

The transmitter provides a standard set of measurement units for **Gas Standard Volume Flow Measurement Unit**, plus one user-defined special measurement unit. Different communications tools may use different labels for the units.

Unit description	Label		
	Display	**ProLink III**	**Field communicator**
Normal cubic meters per second	NCMS	Nm3/sec	Nm3/sec
Normal cubic meters per minute	NCMM	Nm3/min	Nm3/min
Normal cubic meters per hour	NCMH	Nm3/hr	Nm3/hr
Normal cubic meters per day	NCMD	Nm3/day	Nm3/day
Normal liter per second	NLPS	NLPS	NLPS
Normal liter per minute	NLPM	NLPM	NLPM
Normal liter per hour	NLPH	NLPH	NLPH
Normal liter per day	NLPD	NLPD	NLPD
Standard cubic feet per second	SCFS	SCFS	SCFS
Standard cubic feet per minute	SCFM	SCFM	SCFM
Standard cubic feet per hour	SCFH	SCFH	SCFH
Standard cubic feet per day	SCFD	SCFD	SCFD
Standard cubic meters per second	SCMS	Sm3/sec	Sm3/sec
Standard cubic meters per minute	SCMM	Sm3/min	Sm3/min
Standard cubic meters per hour	SCMH	Sm3/hr	Sm3/hr
Standard cubic meters per day	SCMD	Sm3/day	Sm3/day
Standard liter per second	SLPS	SLPS	SLPS
Standard liter per minute	SLPM	SLPM	SLPM
Standard liter per hour	SLPH	SLPH	SLPH
Standard liter per day	SLPD	SLPD	SLPD
Special measurement unit	SPECIAL	Special	Special

Define a special measurement unit for gas standard volume flow

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Units → SPECIAL**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Gas Standard Volume Flow Unit → Special**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → Special Units → Special Gas Standard Volume Units**

A special measurement unit is a user-defined unit of measure that allows you to report process data, totalizer data, and inventory data in a unit that is not available in the transmitter. A special measurement unit is calculated from an existing measurement unit using a conversion factor.

Procedure

1. Specify **Base Gas Standard Volume Unit**.

   Base Gas Standard Volume Unit is the existing gas standard volume unit that the special unit will be based on.
2. Specify **Base Time Unit**.

   Base Time Unit is the existing time unit that the special unit will be based on.
3. Calculate **Gas Standard Volume Flow Conversion Factor** as follows:
   a) x base units = y special units
   b) **Gas Standard Volume Flow Conversion Factor** = x ÷ y
4. Enter the **Gas Standard Volume Flow Conversion Factor**.

   The original gas standard volume flow value is divided by this conversion factor.
5. Set **Gas Standard Volume Flow Label** to the name you want to use for the gas standard volume flow unit.
6. Set **Gas Standard Volume Total Label** to the name you want to use for the gas standard volume total and gas standard volume inventory unit.

The special measurement unit is stored in the transmitter. You can configure the transmitter to use the special measurement unit at any time.

Example: Defining a special measurement unit for gas standard volume flow

You want to measure gas standard volume flow in thousands of standard cubic feet per minute.

1. Set **Base Gas Standard Volume Unit** to SCFM.
2. Set **Base Time Unit** to minutes (min).
3. Calculate the conversion factor:
   a. One thousands of standard cubic feet per minute = 1000 cubic feet per minute
   b. **Gas Standard Volume Flow Conversion Factor** = 1 ÷ 1000 = 0.001
4. Set **Gas Standard Volume Flow Conversion Factor** to `0.001`.
5. Set **Gas Standard Volume Flow Label** to `KSCFM`.
6. Set **Gas Standard Volume Total Label** to `KSCF`.

4.4.4 Configure Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow Variables → Volume Flow Settings → Low Flow Cutoff**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Flow → Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → GSV → GSV Cutoff**

Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff specifies the lowest gas standard volume flow rate that will reported as measured. All gas standard volume flow rates below this cutoff will be reported as 0.

Procedure

Set **Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff** to the value you want to use.

- Default: 0.0
- Range: 0.0 to any positive value

Interaction between Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff and mA Output Cutoff

Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff defines the lowest Gas Standard Volume flow value that the transmitter will report as measured.

mA Output Cutoff defines the lowest flow rate that will be reported through mA Output.

If **mA Output Process Variable** is set to Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate, the volume flow rate reported through mA Output is controlled by the higher of the two cutoff values.

Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff affects both the gas standard volume flow values reported through outputs and the gas standard volume flow values used in other transmitter behavior (for example, events defined on gas standard volume flow).

mA Output Cutoff affects only flow values reported through mA Output.

Example: Cutoff interaction with mA Output Cutoff lower than Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff

Configuration:

- **mA Output Process Variable** for the primary mA Output: Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate
- **Frequency Output Process Variable**: Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate
- **mA Output Cutoff** for the primary mA Output: `10` SLPM (standard liters per minute)
- **Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff**: `15` SLPM

Result: If the Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate drops below 15 SLPM, the volume flow will be reported as 0, and 0 will be used in all internal processing.

Example: Cutoff interaction with mA Output Cutoff higher than Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff

Configuration:

- **mA Output Process Variable** for the primary mA Output: Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate
- **Frequency Output Process Variable**: Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate
- **mA Output Cutoff** for the primary mA Output: `15` SLPM (standard liters per minute)
- **Gas Standard Volume Flow Cutoff**: `10` SLPM

Result:

- If the Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate drops below 15 SLPM but not below 10 SLPM:
  - The primary mA Output will report zero flow.
  - The Frequency Output will report the actual flow rate, and the actual flow rate will be used in all internal processing.
- If the Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate drops below 10 SLPM, both outputs will report zero flow, and 0 will be used in all internal processing.

4.5 Configure density measurement

The density measurement parameters control how density is measured and reported. Density measurement is used with mass flow rate measurement to determine liquid volume flow rate.

4.5.1 Configure Density Measurement Unit

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density → Units**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density → Density Unit**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Density → Density Unit**

Density Measurement Unit controls the measurement units that will be used in density calculations and reporting.

Restriction
If the API Referral application is enabled, you cannot change the density measurement unit here. The density measurement unit is controlled by the API table selection.

Procedure

Set **Density Measurement Unit** to the option you want to use.

Default: g/cm^3 (grams per cubic centimeter)

Options for Density Measurement Unit

The transmitter provides a standard set of measurement units for **Density Measurement Unit**. Different communications tools may use different labels.

Unit description	Label		
	Display	ProLink III	Field communicator
Specific gravity[(1)]	SGU	SGU	SGU
Grams per cubic centimeter	g/cm3	g/cm3	g/Cucm
Grams per liter	g/L	g/l	g/L
Grams per milliliter	g/mL	g/ml	g/mL
Kilograms per liter	kg/L	kg/l	kg/L
Kilograms per cubic meter	kg/m3	kg/m3	kg/Cum
Pounds per U.S. gallon	lb/gal	lbs/USgal	lb/gal
Pounds per cubic foot	lb/ft3	lbs/ft3	lb/Cuft
Pounds per cubic inch	lb/in3	lbs/in3	lb/CuIn
Degrees API[(2)]	API	API	degAPI
Short ton per cubic yard	STon/yd3	sT/yd3	STon/Cuyd

(1) *Non-standard calculation. This value represents line density divided by the density of water at 60 °F (15.6 °C).*
(2) *Non standard calculation, unless the API referral application is enabled. Calculated from line density instead of specific gravity.*

4.5.2 Configure Density Damping

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density → Damping**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density → Density Damping**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Density → Density Damping**

Density Damping controls the amount of damping that will be applied to density data.

Damping is used to smooth out small, rapid fluctuations in process measurement. The damping value specifies the time period, in seconds, over which the transmitter will spread changes in the process variable. At the end of the interval, the internal value of the process variable (the damped value) will reflect 63% of the change in the actual measured value.

Procedure

Set **Density Damping** to the desired value.

- Default: 1.28 seconds
- Range: 0.0 to 60 seconds

Tip

- A high damping value makes the process variable appear smoother because the reported value changes slowly.
- A low damping value makes the process variable appear more erratic because the reported value changes more quickly.
- The combination of a high damping value and rapid, large changes in density can result in increased measurement error.
- Whenever the damping value is non-zero, the damped value will lag the actual measurement because the damped value is being averaged over time.
- In general, lower damping values are preferable because there is less chance of data loss, and less lag time between the actual measurement and the damped value.
- If a number greater than 60 is entered, it is automatically changed to 60.

Effect of Density Damping on volume measurement

Density Damping affects liquid volume measurement. Liquid volume values are calculated from the damped density value rather than the measured density value. **Density Damping** does not affect gas standard volume measurement.

Interaction between Density Damping and mA Output Damping

When mA Output is configured to report density, both **Density Damping** and **mA Output Damping** are applied to the reported density value.

Density Damping controls the rate of change in the value of the process variable in transmitter memory.

mA Output Damping controls the rate of change reported through mA Output.

If **mA Output Source** is set to Density, and both **Density Damping** and **mA Output Damping** are set to non-zero values, density damping is applied first, and the mA Output damping calculation is applied to the result of the first calculation. This value is reported over mA Output.

4.5.3 Configure Density Cutoff

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density → Cutoff**

ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density → Density Cutoff**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Density → Density Cutoff**

Density Cutoff specifies the lowest density value that will be reported as measured. All density values below this cutoff will be reported as 0.

Procedure

Set **Density Cutoff** to the value you want to use.

- Default: 0.2 g/cm^3
- Range: 0.0 g/cm^3 to 0.5 g/cm^3

Effect of Density Cutoff on volume measurement

Density Cutoff affects liquid volume measurement. If the density value goes below **Density Cutoff**, the volume flow rate is reported as 0. **Density Cutoff** does not affect gas standard volume measurement. Gas standard volume values are always calculated from the value configured for **Standard Gas Density** or polled value if configured for polled base density.

4.6 Configure temperature measurement

The temperature measurement parameters control how temperature data is processed. Temperature data is used in several different ways, including temperature compensation, API Referral, and concentration measurement.

4.6.1 Configure Temperature Measurement Unit

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature → Units**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature → Temperature Unit**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Temperature → Unit**

Temperature Measurement Unit specifies the unit that will be used for temperature measurement.

Procedure

Set **Temperature Measurement Unit** to the option you want to use.

Default: °C (Celsius)

Options for Temperature Measurement Unit

The transmitter provides a standard set of units for **Temperature Measurement Unit**. Different communications tools may use different labels for the units.

Unit description	Label		
	Display	**ProLink III**	**Field communicator**
Degrees Celsius	°C	°C	degC
Degrees Fahrenheit	°F	°F	degF
Degrees Rankine	°R	°R	degR
Kelvin	°K	°K	Kelvin

4.6.2 Configure Temperature Damping

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature → Damping**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature → Temperature Damping**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Temperature → Damping**

Temperature Damping controls the amount of damping that will be applied to temperature data from the sensor. **Temperature Damping** is not applied to external temperature data.

Damping is used to smooth out small, rapid fluctuations in process measurement. The damping value specifies the time period, in seconds, over which the transmitter will spread changes in the process variable. At the end of the interval, the internal value of the process variable (the damped value) will reflect 63% of the change in the actual measured value.

Procedure

Set **Temperature Damping** to the desired value.

- Default: 4.8 seconds
- Range: 0.0 to 80 seconds

Note
If a number greater than 80 is entered, it is automatically changed to 80.

Tip
- A high damping value makes the process variable appear smoother because the reported value changes slowly.
- A low damping value makes the process variable appear more erratic because the reported value changes more quickly.
- The combination of a high damping value and rapid, large changes in temperature can result in increased measurement error.
- Whenever the damping value is non-zero, the damped value will lag the actual measurement because the damped value is being averaged over time.
- In general, lower damping values are preferable because there is less chance of data loss, and less lag time between the actual measurement and the damped value.

Effect of Temperature Damping on process measurement

Temperature Damping affects all processes and algorithms that use temperature data from the internal sensor RTD.

Temperature compensation

Temperature compensation adjusts process measurement to compensate for the effect of temperature on the sensor tubes.

API Referral

Temperature Damping affects API Referral process variables only if the transmitter is configured to use temperature data from the sensor. If an external temperature value is used for API Referral, **Temperature Damping** does not affect API Referral process variables.

Concentration measurement

Temperature Damping affects concentration measurement process variables only if the transmitter is configured to use temperature data from the sensor. If an external temperature value is used for concentration measurement, **Temperature Damping** does not affect concentration measurement process variables.

4.7 Configure Pressure Measurement Unit

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Pressure → Units**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Pressure Compensation → Pressure Unit**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Pressure/ Temperature → Pressure → Unit**

Pressure Measurement Unit controls the measurement unit used for pressure. This unit must match the unit used by the external pressure device.

Pressure data is used for pressure compensation and for API Referral. The device does not measure pressure directly. You must set up a pressure input.

Procedure

Set **Pressure Measurement Unit** to the desired unit.

Default: psi

4.7.1 Options for Pressure Measurement Unit

The transmitter provides a standard set of measurement units for **Pressure Measurement Unit**. Different communications tools may use different labels for the units. In most applications, set **Pressure Measurement Unit** to match the pressure measurement unit used by the remote device.

Unit description	Label		
	Display	ProLink III	Field communicator
Feet water @ 68 °F	ftH2O @68°F	Ft Water @ 68°F	ftH_2O
Inches water @ 4 °C	inH2O @4°C	In Water @ 4°C	inH_2O @4DegC
Inches water @ 60 °F	inH2O @60°F	In Water @ 60°F	inH_2O @60DegF
Inches water @ 68 °F	inH2O @68°F	In Water @ 68°F	inH_2O
Millimeters water @ 4 °C	mmH2O @4°C	mm Water @ 4°C	mmH_2O @4DegC
Millimeters water @ 68 °F	mmH2O @68°F	mm Water @ 68°F	mmH_2O
Millimeters mercury @ 0 °C	mmHg @0°C	mm Mercury @ 0°C	mmHg
Inches mercury @ 0 °C	inHg @0°C	In Mercury @ 0°C	inHg
Pounds per square inch	psi	PSI	psi
Bar	bar	bar	bar
Millibar	mbar	millibar	mbar
Grams per square centimeter	g/cm2	g/cm2	g/Sqcm
Kilograms per square centimeter	kg/cm2	kg/cm2	kg/Sqcm
Pascals	Pa	pascals	Pa
Kilopascals	kPA	Kilopascals	kPa
Megapascals	mPA	Megapascals	MPa
Torr @ 0 °C	torr	Torr @ 0°C	torr

Unit description	Label		
	Display	**ProLink III**	**Field communicator**
Atmospheres	atm	atms	atm

4.8 Configure Velocity Measurement Unit

Display	**Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Velocity** → **Units**
ProLink III	**Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Velocity** → **Unit**
Field communicator	**Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Approximate Velocity** → **Velocity Unit**

Velocity Measurement Unit controls the measurement unit used to report velocity.

Procedure

Set **Velocity Measurement Unit** to the desired unit.

Default: m/sec

4.8.1 Options for Velocity Measurement Unit

The transmitter provides a standard set of measurement units for **Velocity Measurement Unit**. Different communications tools may use different labels.

Unit description	Label		
	Display	**ProLink III**	**Field communicator**
Feet per minute	ft/min	ft/min	ft/min
Feet per second	ft/s	ft/sec	ft/s
Inches per minute	in/min	in/min	in/min
Inches per second	in/s	in/sec	in/s
Meters per hour	m/h	m/hr	m/h
Meters per second	m/s	m/sec	m/s

5 Configure process measurement applications

5.1 Set up the API Referral application

The API Referral application corrects line density to reference temperature and reference pressure according to American Petroleum Institute (API) standards. The resulting process variable is *referred density*.

Restriction
The API Referral application is not compatible with the following applications:

- Gas Standard Volume Measurement (GSV)
- Piecewise linearization (PWL)
- Advanced Phase Measurement
- Concentration measurement

5.1.1 Set up the API Referral application using the display

Enable the API Referral application using the display

The API Referral application must be enabled before you can perform any setup. If the API Referral application was enabled at the factory, you do not need to enable it now.

Prerequisites

The API Referral application must be licensed on your transmitter.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement**.
2. Choose **Flow Variables** → **Volume Flow Settings** and ensure that **Flow Type** is set to Liquid.
3. Return to the ***Process Measurement*** menu.
4. If the concentration measurement application is displayed in the list, choose **Concentration Measurement** and ensure that **Enabled/Disabled** is set to **Disabled**.

   The concentration measurement application and the API Referral application cannot be enabled simultaneously.

Configure API Referral using the display

The API Referral parameters specify the API table, measurement units, and reference values to be used in referred density calculations.

Prerequisites

You will need API documentation for the API table that you select.

Depending on your API table, you may need to know the thermal expansion coefficient (TEC) for your process fluid.

You must know the reference temperature and reference pressure that you want to use.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Configure** → **Process Measurement** → **API Referral**.
2. Set **API Table** to the API table that you want to use to calculate referred density.

   Each API table is associated with a specific set of equations. Choose your API table based on your process fluid and the measurement unit that you want to use for referred density.

   Your choice also determines the API table that will be used to calculate the correction factor for volume (CTPL or CTL).

3. Refer to the API documentation and confirm your table selection.
   a) Verify that your process fluid falls within range for line density, line temperature, and line pressure.
   b) Verify that the referred density range of the selected table is adequate for your application.

4. If you chose a C table, enter **Thermal Expansion Coefficient (TEC)** for your process fluid.
   Acceptable limits:
   - 230.0×10^{-6} to 930.0×10^{-6} per °F
   - 414.0×10^{-6} to 1674.0×10^{-6} per °C

5. If required, set **Reference Temperature** to the temperature to which density will be corrected in referred density calculations.

   The default reference temperature is determined by the selected API table.

6. If required, set **Reference Pressure** to the pressure to which density will be corrected in referred density calculations.

   The default reference pressure is determined by the selected API table.

Set up temperature and pressure data for API Referral using the display

The API Referral application uses temperature and, optionally, pressure data in its calculations. You must decide how to provide this data, then perform the required configuration and setup.

Note
Fixed values for temperature or pressure are not recommended. Using a fixed temperature or pressure value may produce inaccurate process data.

Prerequisites

If you plan to poll an external device, the primary mA Output (Channel A) must be wired to support HART® communications.

The pressure measurement must be gauge pressure, not atmospheric pressure.

The pressure device must use the pressure unit that is configured in the transmitter.

If you are using an external temperature device, it must use the temperature unit that is configured in the transmitter.

Procedure

1. Choose the method to be used to supply temperature data, and perform the required setup.

<table>
<tr><th>Method</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Internal temperature</td><td>Temperature data from the on-board temperature sensor (RTD) will be used for all measurements and calculations. No external temperature data will be available.</td><td>a. Choose Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature.
b. Set External Temperature to Off.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for temperature data. This data will be available in addition to the internal temperature data.</td><td>a. Choose Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature.
b. Set External Temperature to On.
c. Choose Poll External Device.
d. Select Polled Variable 1 or Polled Variable 2.
e. Set Variable to External Temperature.
f. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
g. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the external temperature device.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals. This data will be available in addition to the internal temperature data.</td><td>a. Choose Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature.
b. Set External Temperature to On.
c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write temperature data to the transmitter at appropriate intervals.</td></tr>
</table>

2. Choose the method to be used to supply pressure data, and perform the required setup.

<table>
<tr><th>Method</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for pressure data.</td><td>a. Choose Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Pressure → External Pressure.
b. Set External Pressure to On.
c. Choose Poll External Device.
d. Select Polled Variable 1 or Polled Variable 2.
e. Set Variable to External Pressure.
f. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
g. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the external pressure device.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td><td>a. Choose Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Pressure → External Pressure.
b. Set External Pressure to On.
c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write pressure data to the transmitter at appropriate intervals.</td></tr>
</table>

Postrequisites

Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Service Data** → **View Process Variables** and verify the values for External Temperature and External Pressure.

Need help?

If the value is not correct:

- Ensure that the external device and the meter are using the same measurement unit.
- For polling:
  — Verify the wiring between the meter and the external device.
  — Verify the HART tag of the external device.

5.1.2 Set up the API Referral application using ProLink III

Enable the API Referral application using ProLink III

Prerequisites

The API Referral application must be licensed and enabled on your transmitter before you can perform any setup. If the API Referral application was enabled at the factory, you do not need to enable it now.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Flow** and ensure that **Volume Flow Type** is set to Liquid Volume.

2. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Transmitter Options**.
3. If the concentration measurement application is enabled, disable it and select **Apply**.

   The concentration measurement application and the API Referral application cannot be enabled simultaneously.

4. Enable **API Referral** and select **Apply**.

Configure API Referral using ProLink III

The API Referral parameters specify the API table, measurement units, and reference values to be used in referred density calculations.

Prerequisites

You will need API documentation for the API table that you select.

Depending on your API table, you may need to know the thermal expansion coefficient (TEC) for your process fluid.

You must know the reference temperature and reference pressure that you want to use.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **API Referral**.
2. Specify the API table to use to calculate referred density.

   Each API table is associated with a specific set of equations.

   a) Set **Process Fluid** to the API table group that your process fluid belongs to.

API table group	Process fluids
A tables	Generalized crude and JP4
B tables	Generalized products: Gasoline, jet fuel, aviation fuel, kerosene, heating oils, fuel oils, diesel, gas oil
C tables	Liquids with a constant base density or known thermal expansion coefficient (TEC). You will be required to enter the TEC for your process fluid.
D tables	Lubricating oils
E tables	NGL (Natural Gas Liquids) and LPG (Liquid Petroleum Gas)

   b) Set **Referred Density Measurement Unit** to the measurement units that you want to use for referred density.

   c) Select **Apply**.

   These parameters uniquely identify the API table to be used to calculate referred density. The selected API table is displayed, and the meter automatically changes the density unit, temperature unit, pressure unit, and reference pressure to match the API table.

   Your choice also determines the API table that will be used to calculate the correction factor for volume (CTPL or CTL).

   Restriction
   Not all combinations are supported by the API Referral application. See the list of API tables in this manual.

3. Refer to the API documentation and confirm your table selection.

   a) Verify that your process fluid falls within range for line density, line temperature, and line pressure.

b) Verify that the referred density range of the selected table is adequate for your application.

4. If you chose a C table, enter **Thermal Expansion Coefficient (TEC)** for your process fluid.

   Acceptable limits:

   - 230.0 x 10^{-6} to 930.0 x 10^{-6} per °F
   - 414.0 x 10^{-6} to 1674.0 x 10^{-6} per °C

5. Set **Reference Temperature** to the temperature to which density will be corrected in referred density calculations. If you choose **Other**, select the temperature measurement unit and enter the reference temperature.
6. Set **Reference Pressure** to the pressure to which density will be corrected in referred density calculations.

Set up temperature and pressure data for API Referral using ProLink III

The API Referral application uses temperature and, optionally, pressure data in its calculations. You must decide how to provide this data, then perform the required configuration and setup.

Note
Fixed values for temperature or pressure are not recommended. Using a fixed temperature or pressure value may produce inaccurate process data.

Prerequisites

If you plan to poll an external device, the primary mA Output (Channel A) must be wired to support HART® communications.

The pressure measurement must be gauge pressure, not atmospheric pressure.

The pressure device must use the pressure unit that is configured in the transmitter.

If you are using an external temperature device, it must use the temperature unit that is configured in the transmitter.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **API Referral**.
2. Choose the method to be used to supply temperature data, and perform the required setup.

<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for temperature data. This data will be available in addition to the internal RTD temperature data.</td><td>a. Set Line Temperature Source to Poll for External Value.
b. Set Polling Slot to an available slot.
c. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
d. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the temperature device.
e. Select Apply.</td></tr>
</table>

Option	Description	Setup
Digital communications	A host writes temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals. This data will be available in addition to the internal RTD temperature data.	a. Set **Line Temperature Source** to Fixed Value or Digital Communications. b. Select **Apply**. c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals.

3. Choose the method you will use to supply pressure data, and perform the required setup.

<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for pressure data.</td><td>a. Set Pressure Source to Poll for External Value.
b. Set Polling Slot to an available slot.
c. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
d. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the temperature device.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td><td>a. Set Pressure Source to Fixed Value or Digital Communications.
b. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td></tr>
</table>

Postrequisites

If you are using external temperature data, verify the external temperature value displayed in the ***Inputs*** group on the ProLink III main window.

The current pressure value is displayed in the **External Pressure** field. Verify that the value is correct.

Need help?

If the value is not correct:

- Ensure that the external device and the meter are using the same measurement unit.
- For polling:
  - Verify the wiring between the meter and the external device.
  - Verify the HART tag of the external device.

5.1.3 Set up the API Referral application using a field communicator

Enable the API Referral application using a field communicator

Prerequisites

The API Referral application must be licensed and enabled on your transmitter. If the API Referral application was enabled at the factory, you do not need to enable it now.

Volume Flow Type must be set to Liquid.

Procedure

1. Choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **GSV** and ensure that **Volume Flow Type** is set to Liquid.

   This parameter is available only if API Referral or concentration measurement is not enabled. If you do not see this parameter, it is already set correctly.

2. If the concentration measurement application is enabled, disable it.

   The concentration measurement application and the API Referral application cannot be enabled simultaneously.

3. Enable the API Referral application.
4. If **Advance Phase Measurement** → **Output Type** is other than Disabled, disable it.

   The Advance Phase Measurement application and the API Referral application cannot be enabled simultaneously.

Configure API Referral using a field communicator

The API Referral parameters specify the API table, measurement units, and reference values to be used in referred density calculations.

Prerequisites

You will need API documentation for the API table that you select.

Depending on your API table, you may need to know the thermal expansion coefficient (TEC) for your process fluid.

You must know the reference temperature and reference pressure that you want to use.

Procedure

1. Choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **API Referral**.
2. Choose **API Referral Setup**.
3. Specify the API table that you want to use to calculate referred density.

   Each API table is associated with a specific set of equations.

   a) Set **API Table Number** to the number that matches the API table units that you want to use for referred density.

      Your choice also determines the measurement unit to be used for temperature and pressure, and the default values for reference temperature and reference pressure.

API table number	Measurement unit for referred density	Temperature measurement unit	Pressure measurement unit	Default reference temperature	Default reference pressure
5	°API	°F	psi (g)	60 °F	0 psi (g)
6[1]	°API	°F	psi (g)	60 °F	0 psi (g)

API table number	Measurement unit for referred density	Temperature measurement unit	Pressure measurement unit	Default reference temperature	Default reference pressure
23	SGU	°F	psi (g)	60 °F	0 psi (g)
24(1)	SGU	°F	psi (g)	60 °F	0 psi (g)
53	kg/m^3	°C	kPa (g)	15 °C	0 kPa (g)
54(1)	kg/m^3	°C	kPa (g)	15 °C	0 kPa (g)
59(2)	kg/m^3	°C	kPa (g)	20 °C	0 kPa (g)
60(2)	kg/m^3	°C	kPa (g)	20 °C	0 kPa (g)

(1) *Used only with* ***API Table Letter*** *= C.*
(2) *Used only with* ***API Table Letter*** *= E.*

b) Set **API Table Letter** to the letter of the API table group that is appropriate for your process fluid.

API table letter	Process fluids
A	Generalized crude and JP4
B	Generalized products: Gasoline, jet fuel, aviation fuel, kerosene, heating oils, fuel oils, diesel, gas oil
C(1)	Liquids with a constant base density or known thermal expansion coefficient (TEC). You will be required to enter the TEC for your process fluid.
D	Lubricating oils
E(2)	NGL (Natural Gas Liquids) and LPG (Liquid Petroleum Gas)

(1) *Used only with* ***API Table Number*** *= 6, 24, or 54.*
(2) *Used only with* ***API Table Number*** *= 23, 24, 53, 54, 59, or 60.*

API Table Number and **API Table Letter** uniquely identify the API table. The selected API table is displayed, and the meter automatically changes the density unit, temperature unit, pressure unit, reference temperature, and reference pressure to match the API table.

Your choice also determines the API table that will be used to calculate the correction factor for volume (CTPL or CTL).

Restriction
Not all combinations are supported by the API Referral application. See the list of API tables in this manual.

4. If you chose a C table, enter **Thermal Expansion Coefficient (TEC)** for your process fluid.

   Acceptable limits:

   - 230.0×10^{-6} to 930.0×10^{-6} per °F
   - 414.0×10^{-6} to 1674.0×10^{-6} per °C

5. Refer to the API documentation and confirm your table selection.
   a) Verify that your process fluid falls within range for line density, line temperature, and line pressure.
   b) Verify that the referred density range of the selected table is adequate for your application.

6. If required, set **Reference Temperature** to the temperature to which density will be corrected in referred density calculations.

   The default reference temperature is determined by the selected API table.

7. If required, set **Reference Pressure** to the pressure to which density will be corrected in referred density calculations.

   The default reference pressure is determined by the selected API table. API Referral requires gauge pressure.

Set up temperature and pressure data for API Referral using a field communicator

The API Referral application uses temperature and, optionally, pressure data in its calculations. You must decide how to provide this data, then perform the required configuration and setup.

Note
Fixed values for temperature or pressure are not recommended. Using a fixed temperature or pressure value may produce inaccurate process data.

Procedure

1. Choose the method to be used to supply temperature data, and perform the required setup.

<table>
<tr><th>Method</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Internal RTD temperature data</td><td>Temperature data from the on-board temperature sensor (RTD) is used.</td><td>a. Choose Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Pressure/Temperature → Temperature.
b. Set External Temperature to Disable.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for temperature data. This data will be available in addition to the internal RTD temperature data.</td><td>a. Choose Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Pressure/Temperature → Temperature.
b. Set External Temperature to Enable.
c. Choose Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Pressure/Temperature → External Polling.
d. Set Poll Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.<table><tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr><tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr></table>e. Choose an unused polling slot.
f. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the external temperature device.
g. Set Polled Variable to Temperature.</td></tr>
</table>

Method	Description	Setup
Digital communications	A host writes temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals. This data will be available in addition to the internal RTD temperature data.	a. Choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **External Variables** → **External Temperature**. b. Set **Temperature Compensation** to Enable. c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals.

2. Choose the method to be used to supply pressure data, and perform the required setup.

<table>
<tr><th>Method</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for pressure data.</td><td>
a. Choose Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Pressure/Temperature → Pressure.
b. Set Pressure Compensation to Enable.
c. Choose Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Pressure/Temperature → External Polling.
d. Choose an unused polling slot.
e. Set Poll Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
f. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the external pressure device.
g. Set Polled Variable to Pressure.
</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td><td>
a. Choose Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Variables → External Pressure.
b. Set Pressure Compensation to Enable.
c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write pressure data to the transmitter at appropriate intervals.
</td></tr>
</table>

Postrequisites

Need help?

If the value is not correct:

- Ensure that the external device and the meter are using the same measurement unit.
- For polling:
  - Verify the wiring between the meter and the external device.

- — Verify the HART tag of the external device.
- For digital communications:
  - — Verify that the host has access to the required data.
  - — Verify that the host is writing to the correct register in memory, using the correct data type.

5.1.4 API tables supported by the API Referral application

The API tables listed here are supported by the API Referral application.

Table 5-1: API tables, process fluids, measurement units, and default reference values

Process fluid	API tables (calculations)[1]		Referred density (API): unit and range	Default reference temp	Default reference pressure	API standard
	Referred density[2]	CTL or CTPL[3] [4]				
Generalized crude and JP4	5A	6A	Unit: °API Range: 0 to 100 °API	60 °F	0 psi (g)	API MPMS 11.1
	23A	24A	Unit: SGU Range: 0.6110 to 1.0760 SGU	60 °F	0 psi (g)	
	53A	54A	Unit: kg/m^3 Range: 610 to 1075 kg/m^3	15 °C	0 kPa (g)	
Generalized products (gasoline, jet fuel, aviation fuel, kerosene, heating oils, fuel oils, diesel, gas oil)	5B	6B	Unit: °API Range: 0 to 85 °API	60 °F	0 psi (g)	API MPMS 11.1
	23B	24B	Unit: SGU Range: 0.6535 to 1.0760 SGU	60 °F	0 psi (g)	
	53B	54B	Unit: kg/m^3 Range: 653 to 1075 kg/m^3	15 °C	0 kPa (g)	
Liquids with a constant density base or known thermal expansion coefficient[5]	N/A	6C	Unit: °API	60 °F	0 psi (g)	API MPMS 11.1
	N/A	24C	Unit: SGU	60 °F	0 psi (g)	
	N/A	54C	Unit: kg/m^3	15 °C	0 kPa (g)	
Lubricating oils	5D	6D	Unit: °API Range: −10 to +40 °API	60 °F	0 psi (g)	API MPMS 11.1
	23D	24D	Unit: SGU Range: 0.8520 to 1.1640 SGU	60 °F	0 psi (g)	
	53D	54D	Unit: kg/m^3 Range: 825 to 1164 kg/m^3	15 °C	0 kPa (g)	

Table 5-1: API tables, process fluids, measurement units, and default reference values *(continued)*

Process fluid	API tables (calculations)(1)		Referred density (API): unit and range	Default reference temp	Default reference pressure	API standard
	Referred density(2)	CTL or CTPL(3) (4)				
NGL (natural gas liquids) and LPG (liquid petroleum gas)	23E	24E	Unit: SGU	60 °F	0 psi (g)	API MPMS 11.2.4
	53E	54E	Unit: kg/m³	15 °C	0 psi (g)	
	59E	60E	Unit: kg/m³	20 °C	0 psi (g)	

(1) *Each API table represents a specialized equation defined by the American Petroleum Institute for a specific combination of process fluid, line conditions, and output.*
(2) *Referred density is calculated from line density. You must specify this table, either directly or by selecting the process fluid and base density measurement unit.*
(3) *You do not need to specify this table. It is invoked automatically as a result of the previous table selection.*
(4) *CTL is a correction factor based on online temperature. CTPL is a correction factor based on both line pressure and line temperature. Calculation of CTL and CTPL for A, B, C, and D table products is in accordance with API MPMS Chapter 11.1. Calculation of CTL and CTPL for E table products is in accordance with API MPMS Chapters 11.2.2, 11.2.4, and 11.2.5.*
(5) *The Thermal Expansion Coefficient (TEC) replaces the referred density calculation. Use the CTL/CTPL table instead.*

5.1.5 Process variables from the API Referral application

The API Referral application calculates several different process variables according to API standards.

CTPL Correction factor based on line temperature and line pressure.

CTL Correction factor based on line temperature at saturation conditions.

Referred density The measured density after CTL or CTPL has been applied.

API volume flow The measured volume flow rate after CTL or CTPL has been applied. Also called *corrected volume flow*.

Batch-weighted average density One density value is recorded for each unit of flow (e.g., barrel, liter). The average is calculated from these values. The average is reset when the API totalizer is reset. Not available unless a totalizer has been configured with **Source** set to Corrected Volume Flow.

Batch-weighted average temperature One temperature value is recorded for each unit of flow (e.g., barrel, liter). The average is calculated from these values. The average is reset when the API totalizer is reset. Not available unless a totalizer has been configured with **Source** set to Temperature-Corrected Volume Flow.

API volume total The total API volume measured by the transmitter since the last API totalizer reset. Also called *corrected volume total*. Not available unless a totalizer has been configured with **Source** set to Corrected Volume Flow.

API volume inventory The total API volume measured by the transmitter since the last API inventory reset. Also called *corrected volume inventory*. Not available unless an inventory has been configured with **Source** set to Corrected Volume Flow.

5.2 Set up concentration measurement

The concentration measurement application calculates concentration from line density and line temperature.

5.2.1 Preparing to set up concentration measurement

The procedure for setting up concentration measurement application depends on how your device was ordered and how you want to use the application. Review this information before you begin.

Requirements for concentration measurement

To use the concentration measurement application, the following conditions must be met:

- The concentration measurement application must be enabled.
- The API Referral application must be disabled.
- The gas piecewise linearization (PWL) application must be disabled.
- The Advanced Phase Measurement application must be disabled .
- A concentration matrix must be loaded into one of the six slots on the transmitter.

  Tip
  In most cases, the concentration matrix that you ordered was loaded at the factory. If it was not, you have several options for loading a matrix. You can also build a matrix.

- **Temperature Source** must be configured and set up.
- One matrix must be selected as the active matrix (the matrix used for measurement).

Requirements for matrices

A matrix is the set of coefficients used to convert process data to concentration, plus related parameters. The matrix can be saved as a file.

The transmitter requires all matrices to be in .matrix format. You can use ProLink III to load matrices in other formats:

- .edf (used by ProLink II)
- .xml (used by ProLink III)

Any matrix in a slot is available for use. In other words, it can be selected as the active matrix and used for measurement. Matrices must be loaded into a slot before they can be used for measurement.

All matrices in slots must use the same derived variable.

Requirements for derived variables

A *derived variable* is the process variable that a concentration matrix measures. All other process variables are calculated from the derived variable. There are eight possible derived variables. Each matrix is designed for one specific derived variable.

The transmitter can store up to six matrices in six slots. All matrices in the six slots must use the same derived variable. If you change the setting of **Derived Variable**, all matrices are deleted from the six slots.

Tip
Always ensure that **Derived Variable** is set correctly before loading matrices into slots.

Derived variables and net flow rate

If you want the transmitter to calculate Net Mass Flow Rate, the derived variable must be set to Mass Concentration (Density). If your matrix is not designed for Mass Concentration (Density), contact customer support for assistance.

If you want the transmitter to calculate Net Volume Flow Rate, the derived variable must be set to Volume Concentration (Density). If your matrix is not designed for Volume Concentration (Density), contact customer support for assistance.

Derived variables based on specific gravity

The following derived variables are based on specific gravity:

- Specific Gravity
- Concentration (Specific Gravity)
- Mass Concentration (Specific Gravity)
- Volume Concentration (Specific Gravity)

If you are using one of these derived variables, two additional parameters can be configured:

- **Reference Temperature of Water** (default setting: 4 °C)
- **Water Density at Reference Temperature** (default setting: 999.99988 kg/m^3)

These two parameters are used to calculate specific gravity.

You cannot set these parameters from the display. If the default values are not appropriate, you must use another method to set them.

Optional tasks in setting up concentration measurement

The following tasks are optional:

- Modifying names and labels
- Configuring extrapolation alerts

5.2.2 Set up concentration measurement using the display

This section guides you through most of the tasks related to setting up and implementing the concentration measurement application.

Restriction
This section does not cover building a concentration matrix. For detailed information on building a matrix, see the *Micro Motion Enhanced Density Application Manual*.

Enable concentration measurement using the display

The concentration measurement application must be enabled before you can perform any setup. If the concentration measurement application was enabled at the factory, you do not need to enable it now.

Prerequisites

The concentration measurement application must be licensed on your transmitter.

Disable the following applications before enabling concentration measurement as concentration measurement cannot be enabled at the same time:

- API Referral
- Piecewise linearization (PWL)
- Gas Standard Volume

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement**.
2. Choose **Flow Variables** → **Volume Flow Settings** and ensure that **Flow Type** is set to Liquid.

3. Return to the ***Process Measurement*** menu.
4. If the API Referral application is displayed in the menu, choose **API Referral** and ensure that **Enabled/ Disabled** is set to Disabled.

   The concentration measurement application and the API Referral application cannot be enabled simultaneously.

5. If the Advanced Phase Measurement application is displayed in the menu, choose **Advanced Phase Measurement** → **Application Setup** and ensure that **Enabled/Disabled** is set to Disabled.
6. Enable concentration measurement.
   a) Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**.
   b) Set **Enabled/Disabled** to Enabled.

Set up temperature data using the display

The concentration measurement application uses line temperature data in its calculations. You must decide how to provide this data, then perform the required configuration and setup. Temperature data from the on-board temperature sensor (RTD) is always available. Optionally, you can set up an external temperature device and use external temperature data.

The temperature setup that you establish here will be used for all concentration measurement matrices on this meter.

Important
Line temperature data is used in several different measurements and calculations. It is possible to use the internal RTD temperature in some areas and an external temperature in others. The transmitter stores the internal RTD temperature and the external temperature separately. However, the transmitter stores only one alternate temperature value, which may be either the external temperature or the configured fixed value. Accordingly, if you choose a fixed temperature for some uses, and an external temperature for others, the external temperature will overwrite the fixed value.

Procedure

Choose the method to be used to supply temperature data, and perform the required setup.

Method	Description	Setup
Internal temperature	Temperature data from the on-board temperature sensor (RTD) will be used for all measurements and calculations. No external temperature data will be available.	a. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Temperature**. b. Set **External Temperature** to Off.

<table>
<tr><th>Method</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for temperature data. This data will be available in addition to the internal temperature data.</td><td>a. Choose Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature.
b. Set External Temperature to On.
c. Choose Poll External Device.
d. Select Polled Variable 1 or Polled Variable 2.
e. Set Variable to External Temperature.
f. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
g. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the external temperature device.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals. This data will be available in addition to the internal temperature data.</td><td>a. Choose Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Temperature.
b. Set External Temperature to On.
c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write temperature data to the transmitter at appropriate intervals.</td></tr>
</table>

Postrequisites

Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Service Data** → **View Process Variables** and verify the value for External Temperature.

Need help?

If the value is not correct:

- Ensure that the external device and the meter are using the same measurement unit.
- For polling:
  - — Verify the wiring between the meter and the external device.
  - — Verify the HART tag of the external device.

Modify matrix names and labels using the display

For convenience, you can change the name of a concentration matrix and the label used for its measurement unit. This does not affect measurement.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement** → **Configure Matrix**.
2. Select the matrix that you want to modify.
3. Set **Matrix Name** to the name that will be used for this matrix.

4. Set **Concentration Unit** to the label that will be used for the concentration unit.

   If you want to use a custom label, you can use the display to select Special. However, you cannot use the display to configure the custom label. You must use another tool to change the label from Special to a user-defined string.

Modify extrapolation alerts using the display

You can enable and disable extrapolation alerts, and set extrapolation alert limits. These parameters control the behavior of the concentration measurement application but do not affect measurement directly.

Each concentration matrix is built for a specific density range and a specific temperature range. If line density or line temperature goes outside the range, the transmitter will extrapolate concentration values. However, extrapolation may affect accuracy. Extrapolation alerts are used to notify the operator that extrapolation is occurring.

Each concentration matrix has its own extrapolation alert limits.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement** → **Configure Matrix**.
2. Select the matrix that you want to modify.
3. Set **Extrapolation Limit** to the point, in percent, at which an extrapolation alert will be posted.
4. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement** → **Configure Application** → **Extrapolation Alerts**.
5. Enable or disable the high and low limit alerts for temperature and density as desired.

Example: Extrapolation alerts in action

If **Extrapolation Limit** is set to 5%, **High Limit (Temp)** is enabled, and the active matrix is built for a temperature range of 40 °F (4.4 °C) to 80 °F (26.7 °C), a high-temperature extrapolation alert will be posted if line temperature goes above 82 °F (27.8 °C).

Select the active concentration matrix using the display

You must select the concentration matrix to be used for measurement. Although the transmitter can store up to six concentration matrices, only one matrix can be used for measurement at any one time.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement** → **Configure Application**.
2. Set **Active Matrix** to the matrix you want to use.

5.2.3 Set up concentration measurement using ProLink III

This section guides you through the tasks required to set up, configure, and implement concentration measurement.

Enable concentration measurement using ProLink III

The concentration measurement application must be enabled before you can perform any setup. If the concentration measurement application was enabled at the factory, you do not need to enable it now.

Prerequisites

The concentration measurement application must be licensed on your transmitter.

Disable the following applications before enabling concentration measurement as concentration measurement cannot be enabled at the same time:

- API Referral
- Piecewise linearization (PWL)
- Gas Standard Volume

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Flow** and ensure that **Volume Flow Type** is set to Liquid Volume.
2. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Advance Phase Measurement** → **APM Status** and ensure that **Application Status** is set to Disable.
3. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Transmitter Options**.
4. Disable API Referral and set the Advance Phase Measurement application to Disabled or Single Liquid.
5. Disable gas Piecewise Linearization (PWL), and set the Advance Phase Measurement application to Disabled or Single Liquid.
6. Set **Concentration Measurement** to Enabled and select **Apply**.

Load a concentration matrix using ProLink III

At least one concentration matrix must be loaded onto your transmitter. You can load up to six.

Prerequisites

The concentration measurement application must be enabled on your device.

For each concentration matrix that you want to load, you need a file containing the matrix data. The ProLink III installation includes a set of standard concentration matrices. Other matrices are available from Emerson. The file can be on your computer or in the transmitter internal memory.

The file must be in one of the formats that ProLink III supports. This includes:

- .xml (ProLink III)
- .matrix (4700)

If you are loading an .xml file, you must know the following information for your matrix:

- The derived variable that the matrix is designed to calculate
- The density unit that the matrix was built with
- The temperature unit that the matrix was built with

If you are loading a .matrix file, you must know the derived variable that the matrix is designed to calculate.

Important

- All concentration matrices on your transmitter must use the same derived variable.
- If you change the setting of **Derived Variable**, all existing concentration matrices will be deleted from the six slots on the transmitter. Set **Derived Variable** before loading concentration matrices.
- ProLink III loads matrices directly to one of the six transmitter slots.

Tip

In many cases, concentration matrices were ordered with the device and loaded at the factory. You may not need to load any matrices.

Procedure

1. If you are loading an .xml file, choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Line Density** and set **Density Unit** to the density unit used by your matrix.

   Important
   When you load a matrix in one of these formats, if the density unit is not correct, concentration data will be incorrect. The density units must match at the time of loading. You can change the density unit after the matrix is loaded.

2. If you are loading an .xml file, choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Line Temperature** and set **Temperature Unit** to the temperature unit used by your matrix.

   Important
   When you load a matrix in one of these formats, if the temperature unit is not correct, concentration data will be incorrect. The temperature units must match at the time of loading. You can change the temperature unit after the matrix is loaded.

3. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**.
   The ***Concentration Measurement*** window is displayed. It is organized into steps that allow you to perform several different setup and configuration tasks. For this task, you will not use all the steps.
4. In Step 1, ensure that the setting of **Derived Variable** matches the derived variable used by your matrix. If it does not, change it as required and select **Apply**.

   Important
   If you change the setting of **Derived Variable**, all existing concentration matrices will be deleted from the six slots. Verify the setting of **Derived Variable** before continuing.

5. Load one or more matrices.
   a) In Step 2, set **Matrix Being Configured** to the location (slot) to which the matrix will be loaded.
   b) To load a .xml file from your computer, select **Load Matrix from File**, navigate to the file, and load it.
   c) To load a .matrix file from your computer, select **Load Matrix from My Computer**, navigate to the file, and load it.
   d) To load a .matrix file from the transmitter internal memory, select Load Matrix from 4700 Device Memory, navigate to the file on the transmitter, and load it.
   e) Repeat until all required matrices are loaded.

Set reference temperature values for specific gravity using ProLink III

When **Derived Variable** is set to any option based on specific gravity, you must set the reference temperature for water, then verify the density of water at the configured reference temperature. These values affect specific gravity measurement.

This requirement applies to the following derived variables:

- Specific Gravity
- Concentration (Specific Gravity)
- Mass Concentration (Specific Gravity)
- Volume Concentration (Specific Gravity)

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**.
   The ***Concentration Measurement*** window is displayed. It is organized into steps that allow you to perform several different setup and configuration tasks. For this task, you will not use all the steps.
2. Scroll to Step 2, set **Matrix Being Configured** to the matrix you want to modify, and select **Change Matrix**.
3. Scroll to Step 3, then perform the following actions:
   a) Set **Reference Temperature for Referred Density** to the temperature to which line density will be corrected for use in the specific gravity calculation.
   b) Set **Reference Temperature for Water** to the water temperature that will be used in the specific gravity calculation.
   c) Set **Water Density at Reference Temperature** to the density of water at the specified reference temperature.

      The transmitter automatically calculates the density of water at the specified temperature. The new value will be displayed the next time that transmitter memory is read. You can enter a different value if you prefer.
4. Select **Apply** at the bottom of Step 3.

Set up temperature data using ProLink III

The concentration measurement application uses line temperature data in its calculations. You must decide how to provide this data, then perform the required configuration and setup. Temperature data from the on-board temperature sensor (RTD) is always available. Optionally, you can set up an external temperature device and use external temperature data.

The temperature setup that you establish here will be used for all concentration measurement matrices on this meter.

Important
Line temperature data is used in several different measurements and calculations. It is possible to use the internal RTD temperature in some areas and an external temperature in others. The transmitter stores the internal RTD temperature and the external temperature separately. However, the transmitter stores only one alternate temperature value, which may be either the external temperature or the configured fixed value. Accordingly, if you choose a fixed temperature for some uses, and an external temperature for others, the external temperature will overwrite the fixed value.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**.

   The ***Concentration Measurement*** window is displayed. It is organized into steps that allow you to perform several different setup and configuration tasks. For this task, you will not use all the steps.
2. Scroll to Step 4.
3. Choose the method to be used to supply temperature data, and perform the required setup.

Option	Description	Setup
Internal temperature	Temperature data from the on-board temperature sensor (RTD) will be used for all measurements and calculations. No external temperature data will be available.	a. Set **Line Temperature Source** to Internal. b. Click **Apply**.

<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for temperature data. This data will be available in addition to the internal RTD temperature data.</td><td>a. Set Line Temperature Source to Poll for External Value.
b. Set Polling Slot to an available slot.
c. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
d. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the temperature device.
e. Click Apply.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals. This data will be available in addition to the internal RTD temperature data.</td><td>a. Set Line Temperature Source to Fixed Value or Digital Communications.
b. Click Apply.
c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write temperature data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td></tr>
</table>

Postrequisites

If you are using external temperature data, verify the external temperature value displayed in the ***Inputs*** group on the ProLink III main window.

Need help?

If the value is not correct:

- Ensure that the external device and the meter are using the same measurement unit.
- For polling:
  — Verify the wiring between the meter and the external device.
  — Verify the HART tag of the external device.

Modify matrix names and labels using ProLink III

For convenience, you can change the name of a concentration matrix and the label used for its measurement unit. This does not affect measurement.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**.
   The ***Concentration Measurement*** window is displayed. It is organized into steps that allow you to perform several different setup and configuration tasks. For this task, you will not use all the steps.
2. Scroll to Step 2, set **Matrix Being Configured** to the matrix you want to modify, and click **Change Matrix**.
3. Scroll to Step 3, then perform the following actions:
   a) Set **Concentration Units Label** to the label that will be used for the concentration unit.

b) If you set **Concentration Units Label** to Special, enter the custom label in **User-Defined Label**.

c) In **Matrix Name**, enter the name to be used for the matrix.

4. Select **Apply** at the bottom of Step 3.

Modify extrapolation alerts using ProLink III

You can enable and disable extrapolation alerts, and set extrapolation alert limits. These parameters control the behavior of the concentration measurement application but do not affect measurement directly.

Each concentration matrix is built for a specific density range and a specific temperature range. If line density or line temperature goes outside the range, the transmitter will extrapolate concentration values. However, extrapolation may affect accuracy. Extrapolation alerts are used to notify the operator that extrapolation is occurring.

Each concentration matrix has its own extrapolation alert limits.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**.
   The ***Concentration Measurement*** window is displayed. It is organized into steps that allow you to perform several different setup and configuration tasks. For this task, you will not use all the steps.
2. Scroll to Step 2, set **Matrix Being Configured** to the matrix you want to modify, and click **Change Matrix**.
3. Scroll to Step 4.
4. Set **Extrapolation Alert Limit** to the point, in percent, at which an extrapolation alert will be posted.
5. Enable or disable the high and low limit alerts for temperature and density, as desired, and click **Apply**.

Example: Extrapolation alerts in action

If **Extrapolation Limit** is set to 5%, **High Limit (Temp)** is enabled, and the active matrix is built for a temperature range of 40 °F (4.4 °C) to 80 °F (26.7 °C), a high-temperature extrapolation alert will be posted if line temperature goes above 82 °F (27.8 °C).

Select the active concentration matrix using ProLink III

You must select the concentration matrix to be used for measurement. Although the transmitter can store up to six concentration matrices, only one matrix can be used for measurement at any one time.

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**.
2. Scroll to Step 2, set **Active Matrix** to the matrix you want to use and select **Change Matrix**.

5.2.4 Set up concentration measurement using a field communicator

This section guides you through most of the tasks related to setting up and implementing the concentration measurement application.

Enable concentration measurement using a field communicator

The concentration measurement application must be enabled before you can perform any setup. If the concentration measurement application was enabled at the factory, you do not need to enable it now.

Prerequisites

The concentration measurement application must be licensed on your transmitter.

Disable the following applications before enabling concentration measurement as concentration measurement cannot be enabled at the same time:

- API Referral
- Piecewise linearization (PWL)
- Gas Standard Volume

Procedure

1. Choose **Overview** → **Device Information** → **Licenses** → **Enable/Disable Applications** and ensure that **Volume Flow Type** is set to Liquid.
2. Choose **Overview** → **Device Information** → **Licenses** → **Enable/Disable Applications**.
3. Enable the concentration measurement application.

Set reference temperature values for specific gravity using a field communicator

Field communicator	**Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **Concentration Measurement** → **Configuration Matrix**

When **Derived Variable** is set to any option based on specific gravity, you must set the reference temperature for water, then verify the density of water at the configured reference temperature. These values affect specific gravity measurement.

To check the setting of **Derived Variable**, choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **Conc Measurement** → **CM Configuration**.

Important
Do not change the setting of **Derived Variable**. If you change the setting of **Derived Variable**, all existing concentration matrices will be deleted from transmitter memory.

Procedure

1. Set **Matrix Being Configured** to the matrix you want to modify.
2. Choose **Reference Conditions**, then perform the following actions:
   a) Set **Reference Temperature** to the temperature to which line density will be corrected for use in the specific gravity calculation.
   b) Set **Water Reference Temperature** to the water temperature that will be used in the specific gravity calculation.
   c) Set **Water Reference Density** to the density of water at the specified reference temperature.

      The transmitter automatically calculates the density of water at the specified temperature. The new value will be displayed the next time that transmitter memory is read. Optionally, you can enter a different value.

Modify matrix names and labels using a field communicator

Field communicator	**Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **Conc Measurement** → **Configure Matrix**

For convenience, you can change the name of a concentration matrix and the label used for its measurement unit. This does not affect measurement.

Procedure

1. Set **Matrix Being Configured** to the matrix you want to modify.
2. Set **Matrix Name** to the name to be used for the matrix.

3. Set **Concentration Unit** to the label that will be used for the concentration unit.
4. If you set **Concentration Unit** to Special, choose **Label** and enter the custom label.

Modify extrapolation alerts using a field communicator

You can enable and disable extrapolation alerts, and set extrapolation alert limits. These parameters control the behavior of the concentration measurement application but do not affect measurement directly.

Each concentration matrix is built for a specific density range and a specific temperature range. If line density or line temperature goes outside the range, the transmitter will extrapolate concentration values. However, extrapolation may affect accuracy. Extrapolation alerts are used to notify the operator that extrapolation is occurring.

Each concentration matrix has its own extrapolation alert limits.

Procedure

1. Choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **Conc Measurement** → **Configure Matrix**.
2. Set **Matrix Being Configured** to the matrix you want to modify.
3. Set **Extrapolation Alert Limit** to the point, in percent, at which an extrapolation alert will be posted.
4. Choose **Configure** → **Alert Setup** → **CM Alerts**.
5. Enable or disable the high and low alerts for temperature and density, as desired.

Extrapolation alerts in action

If **Extrapolation Limit** is set to 5%, **High Limit (Temp)** is enabled, and the active matrix is built for a temperature range of 40 °F (4.4 °C) to 80 °F (26.7 °C), a high-temperature extrapolation alert will be posted if line temperature goes above 82 °F (27.8 °C).

Select the active concentration matrix using a field communicator

Field communicator	**Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **Conc Measurement** → **CM Configuration**

You must select the concentration matrix to be used for measurement. Although the transmitter can store up to six concentration matrices, only one matrix can be used for measurement at any one time.

Procedure

Set **Active Matrix** to the matrix you want to use.

6 Configure advanced options for process measurement

6.1 Detect and report two-phase flow

Two-phase flow (gas in a liquid process or liquid in a gas process) can cause a variety of process control issues. The transmitter provides two methods to detect and report or respond to two-phase flow.

6.1.1 Detect two-phase flow using density

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Density**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Density → Slug Low Limit** **Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Density → Slug High Limit** **Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Density → Slug Duration**

The transmitter can use line density data to detect two-phase flow (gas in a liquid process or liquid in a gas process). The density limits are user-specified. When two-phase flow is detected, an alert is posted.

Procedure

1. Set **Two-Phase Flow Low Limit** to the lowest density value that is considered normal in your process.

   Values below this will cause the transmitter to post a Process Aberration alert.

   Tip
   Gas entrainment can cause your process density to drop temporarily. To reduce the occurrence of two-phase flow alerts that are not significant to your process, set **Two-Phase Flow Low Limit** slightly below your expected lowest process density.

   You must enter **Two-Phase Flow Low Limit** in g/cm^3, even if you configured another unit for density measurement.

   - Default: 0 g/cm^3
   - Range: 0 g/cm^3 to the sensor limit

2. Set **Two-Phase Flow High Limit** to the highest density value that is considered normal in your process.

   Values above this will cause the transmitter to post a Process Aberration alert.

   Tip
   To reduce the occurrence of two-phase flow alerts that are not significant to your process, set **Two-Phase Flow High Limit** slightly above your expected highest process density.

   You must enter **Two-Phase Flow High Limit** in g/cm^3, even if you configured another unit for density measurement.

   - Default: 5 g/cm^3
   - Range: 5 g/cm^3 to the sensor limit

3. Set **Two-Phase Flow Timeout** to the number of seconds that the transmitter will wait for a two-phase flow condition to clear before posting the alert.
    - Default: 0 seconds, meaning that the alert will be posted immediately
    - Range: 0 to 60 seconds

6.1.2 Detect two-phase flow using sensor diagnostics

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Source**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output *x***
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mAO*x*Source**

The transmitter always monitors sensor diagnostics and applies a two-phase flow algorithm. You can assign an mA Output to report the results of this calculation: single-phase flow, moderate two-phase flow, or severe two-phase flow. Severe two-phase flow can cause the meter to stop functioning.

Procedure

Set **mA Output Source** to Two-Phase Flow Detection.

The signal from the mA Output indicates the current state of the process:

- 12 mA: Single-phase flow
- 16 mA: Moderate two-phase flow
- 20 mA: Severe two-phase flow

6.2 Configure Flow Rate Switch

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Alert Setup → Enhanced Events → Flow Rate Switch**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Discrete Output → Source → Flow Switch Indication**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Discrete Output *x* → Flow Switch**

Flow Rate Switch is used to indicate that the flow rate has moved past a user-specified setpoint, in either direction. The flow rate switch is implemented with a user-configurable hysteresis.

Typically, a Discrete Output is assigned as the flow rate switch indicator. The Discrete Output can be wired to an external device such as a light or a horn.

Prerequisites

A channel must be configured as a Discrete Output, and the Discrete Output must be available for this use.

Procedure

1. Set **Discrete Output Source** to Flow Switch, if you have not already done so.
2. Set **Flow Switch Variable** to the flow variable that you want to use to control the flow rate switch.
3. Set **Flow Switch Setpoint** to the value at which the flow switch will be triggered (after **Hysteresis** is applied).

    Depending on the polarity of the Discrete Output:

    - If the flow rate is below this value, the Discrete Output is ON.
    - If the flow rate is above this value, the Discrete Output is OFF.

4. Set **Hysteresis** to the percentage of variation above and below the setpoint that will operate as a deadband.

   Hysteresis defines a range around the setpoint within which the flow rate switch will not change.

   - Default: 5%
   - Range: 0.1% to 10%

   Example

   If **Flow Switch Setpoint** = `100` g/sec and **Hysteresis** = `5%`, and the first measured flow rate is above 100 g/sec, the discrete output is OFF. It will remain OFF unless the flow rate drops below 95 g/sec. If this happens, the discrete output will turn ON, and remain ON until the flow rate rises above 105 g/sec. At this point it turns OFF and will remain OFF until the flow rate drops below 95 g/sec.

Related information

Configure the Discrete Output

6.3 Configure events

An event occurs when the real-time value of a user-specified process variable moves past a user-defined setpoint. Events are used to provide notification of process changes or to perform specific transmitter actions if a process change occurs.

Your transmitter supports the enhanced event model.

Tip
Enhanced events allow:

- Defining events by range (In Range or Out of Range), in addition to High and Low
- Triggering transmitter actions if an event occurs

6.3.1 Configure an enhanced event

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Alert Setup → Enhanced Events**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Events → Enhanced Events**
Field communicator	**Configure → Alert Setup → Enhanced Events**

An enhanced event is used to provide notification of process changes and, optionally, to perform specific transmitter actions if the event occurs. An enhanced event occurs (is ON) if the real-time value of a user-specified process variable moves above (HI) or below (LO) a user-defined setpoint, or in range (IN) or out of range (OUT) with respect to two user-defined setpoints.

You can define up to five enhanced events. For each enhanced event, you can assign one or more actions that the transmitter will perform if the enhanced event occurs.

Procedure

1. Select the event that you want to configure.
2. Assign a process variable to the event.
3. Specify **Event Type**.

Option	Description
HI	$x > A$

Option	Description
	The event occurs when the value of the assigned process variable (*x*) is greater than the setpoint (**Setpoint A**), endpoint not included.
LO	$x < A$ The event occurs when the value of the assigned process variable (*x*) is less than the setpoint (**Setpoint A**), endpoint not included.
IN	$A \leq x \leq B$ The event occurs when the value of the assigned process variable (*x*) is *in range,* that is, between **Setpoint A** and **Setpoint B**, endpoints included.
OUT	$x \leq A$ or $x \geq B$ The event occurs when the value of the assigned process variable (*x*) is *out of range,* that is, less than **Setpoint A** or greater than **Setpoint B**, endpoints included.

4. Set values for the required setpoints.
   - For HI and LO events, set **Setpoint A**.
   - For IN and OUT events, set **Setpoint A** and **Setpoint B**.
5. Optional: Configure a Discrete Output to switch states in response to the event status.
6. Optional: Specify the action or actions that the transmitter will perform when the event occurs.

Option	Description
Display	**Menu → Configuration → Alert Setup → Enhanced Events**, select any enhanced event, and choose **Assign Actions**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Inputs → Action Assignment**
Field communicator	**Configure → Alert Setup → Enhanced Events**

Options for Enhanced Event Action

Action	Label		
	Display	ProLink III	Field communicator
Standard			
Start sensor zero	Start Zero Calibration	Start Sensor Zero	Start Sensor Zero
Totalizers			
Start/stop all totalizers and inventories	Start/stop all totalizers	Start or Stop All Totalizers	Start/Stop All Totals
Reset totalizer X	Reset Total X	Totalizer X	Reset Total X
Reset all totalizers and inventories	Reset All Totals	Reset All Totals	Reset All Totals
Concentration measurement			
Increment CM matrix	Increment Matrix	Increment ED Curve	Increment Curve

6.4 Configure totalizers and inventories

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Process Measurement → Totalizers & Inventories**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Totalizer Control → Totalizers**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → Configure Totalizers**

The transmitter provides seven configurable totalizers and seven configurable inventories. Each totalizer and each inventory can be configured independently.

Totalizers track the process since the last totalizer reset. Inventories track the process since the last inventory reset. Inventories are typically used to track the process across totalizer resets.

Tip
The default configurations cover the most typical uses of totalizers and inventories. You may not need to change any configurations.

Prerequisites

Before configuring the totalizers and inventories, ensure that the process variables you plan to track are available on the transmitter. You may need to configure an application.

Procedure

1. Select the totalizer or inventory that you want to configure.
2. Set **Totalizer Source** or **Inventory Source** to the process variable that the totalizer or inventory will track.

Option	Description
Mass flow	The totalizer or inventory will track Mass Flow Rate and calculate total mass since the last reset.
Volume flow	The totalizer or inventory will track Volume Flow Rate and calculate total volume since the last reset.
Gas standard volume flow	The totalizer or inventory will track Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate and calculate total volume since the last reset.
Temperature-corrected volume flow	The totalizer or inventory will track Temperature-Corrected Volume Flow Rate and calculate total volume since the last reset.
Standard volume flow	The totalizer or inventory will track Standard Volume Flow Rate and calculate total volume since the last reset.
Net mass flow	The totalizer or inventory will track Net Mass Flow Rate and calculate total mass since the last reset.
Net volume flow	The totalizer or inventory will track Net Volume Flow Rate and calculate total volume since the last reset.

Note
The totalizer/inventory value will not automatically be reset when the source is changed. The user must manually reset the totalizer/inventory.

Tip
If you are using the API Referral application and you want to measure batch-weighted average density or batch-weighted average temperature, you must have a totalizer configured to measure temperature-corrected volume flow.

3. Set **Totalizer Direction** to specify how the totalizer or inventory will respond to forward or reverse flow.

Option	Flow direction	Totalizer and inventory behavior
Forward Only	Forward	Totals increment
	Reverse	Totals do not change
Reverse Only	Forward	Totals do not change
	Reverse	Totals increment
Bidirectional	Forward	Totals increment
	Reverse	Totals decrement
Absolute Value	Forward	Totals increment
	Reverse	Totals increment

Important
Actual flow direction interacts with **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** to determine the flow direction that the transmitter uses in processing. See the following table.

Table 6-1: Interaction between actual flow direction and Sensor Flow Direction Arrow

Actual flow direction	Setting of Sensor Flow Direction Arrow	Flow direction sent to outputs and totalizers
Forward (same direction as Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Forward
	Against Arrow	Reverse
Reverse (opposite from Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Reverse
	Against Arrow	Forward

4. Optional: Set **User Name** to the name you want to use for the inventory or totalizer.

   User-Defined Label can have a maximum of 16 characters.

   The transmitter automatically generates a name for each totalizer and inventory, based on its source, direction, and type.

   Example

   - **Source**=Mass Flow
   - **Direction**=Forward Only
   - **User-Defined Label**=`Mass Fwd Total`

   Example

   - **Source**=Gas Standard Volume Flow
   - **Direction**=Bidirectional
   - **User-Defined Label** = `GSV Bidir Inv`

   The specified name is used on the transmitter display and on all interfaces that support it. If **User Name** contains only spaces, the transmitter-generated name is used. Not all interfaces support totalizer and inventory names.

Example: Checking for backflow

You suspect that there is a significant amount of backflow through the sensor. To collect data, configure two totalizers as follows:

- **Source**=Mass Flow, **Direction**=Forward Only
- **Source**=Mass Flow, **Direction**=Reverse Only

Reset both totalizers, allow them to run for an appropriate period, then look at the amount of reverse flow as a percentage of forward flow.

Example: Tracking three different process fluids

Three tanks are connected to a loading dock through a single meter. Each tank contains a different process fluid. You want to track each process fluid separately.

1. Set up three totalizers, one for each tank.
2. Name the totalizers `Tank 1`, `Tank 2`, and `Tank 3`.
3. Configure each totalizer as required for the corresponding process fluid.
4. Stop and reset all three totalizers to ensure that the beginning values are 0.
5. When loading from a tank, start the corresponding totalizer, and stop it when the load is finished.

6.4.1 Default settings for totalizers and inventories

Totalizer or inventory	Source (process variable assignment	Direction	Name of totalizer Name of inventory
1	Mass flow	Forward Only	Mass Fwd Total Mass Fwd Inv
2	Volume flow	Forward Only	Volume Fwd Total Volume Fwd Inv
3	Temperature-corrected volume flow	Forward Only	API Volume Fwd Total API Volume Fwd Inv
4	Gas standard volume flow	Forward Only	GSV Fwd Total GSV Fwd Inv
5	Standard volume flow	Forward Only	Standard Vol Fwd Total Standard Vol Fwd Inv
6	Net mass flow	Forward Only	Net Mass Fwd Total Net Mass Fwd Inv
7	Net volume flow	Forward Only	Net Vol Fwd Total Net Vol Fwd Inv

6.5 Configure logging for totalizers and inventories

Display	Not available
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Totalizer Log**
Field Communicator	Not available

The transmitter can write the current value of four totalizers or inventories to a log, at user-specified intervals. You can generate a log file from this data for viewing and analysis.

Procedure

1. Specify the date on which totalizer logging will begin.

You must specify a future date. If you try to specify the current date, the transmitter will reject the setting.

2. Specify the time at which totalizer logging will begin.
3. Specify the number of hours between records.
4. Select up to four totalizers or inventories to be logged.

6.6 Configure Process Variable Fault Action

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Alert Setup → Output Fault Actions**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Fault Processing**
Field communicator	**Configure → Alert Setup → Output Fault Actions → Process Var Fault Action**

Process Variable Fault Action specifies the values that will be reported via the display and digital communications if the device encounters a fault condition. The values are also sent to the outputs for processing against their configured fault actions.

Procedure

Set **Process Variable Fault Action** as desired.

Default: None

Restriction
If you set **Process Variable Fault Action** to NAN, you cannot set **mA Output Fault Action** or **Frequency Output Fault Action** to None. If you try to do this, the transmitter will not accept the configuration.

Important

- If you want the mA Output to continue reporting process data during fault conditions, you must set both **Process Variable Fault Action** and **mA Output Fault Action** to **None**. If **mA Output Fault Action** is set to **None** and **Process Variable Fault Action** is set to any other option, the mA Output will produce the signal associated with the selection.
- If you want the Frequency Output to continue reporting process data during fault conditions, you must set both **Process Variable Fault Action** and **Frequency Output Fault Action** to **None**. If **Frequency Output Fault Action** is set to **None** and **Process Variable Fault Action** is set to any other option, the Frequency Output will produce the signal associated with the selection.

6.6.1 Options for Process Variable Fault Action

Label			Description
Display	**ProLink III**	**Field communicator**	
Upscale	Upscale	Upscale	• Process variable values indicate that the value is greater than the upper sensor limit. • Totalizers stop incrementing.
Downscale	Downscale	Downscale	• Process variable values indicate that the value is lower than the lower sensor limit. • Totalizers stop incrementing.

Label			Description
Display	ProLink III	Field communicator	
Zero	Zero	IntZero-All 0	• Flow rate variables go to the value that represents a flow rate of 0 (zero). • Density is reported as 0. • Temperature is reported as 0°C, or the equivalent if other units are used (e.g., 32°F. • Drive gain is reported as measured. • Totalizers stop incrementing.
Not-a-Number (NAN)	Not a Number	Not-a-Number	• Process variables are reported as IEEE NAN. • Drive gain is reported as measured. • Modbus® scaled integers are reported as Max Int. • Totalizers stop incrementing.
Flow to Zero	Flow to Zero	IntZero-Flow 0	• Flow rates are reported as 0. • Other process variables are reported as measured. • Totalizers stop incrementing.
None (default)	None	None (default)	• All process variables are reported as measured. • Totalizers increment if they are running.

6.6.2 Interaction between Process Variable Fault Action and other fault actions

The setting of **Process Variable Fault Action** affects the operation of the mA Outputs, Frequency Outputs, and Discrete Outputs if the corresponding output fault actions are set to None.

Interaction between Process Variable Fault Action and mA Output Fault Action

If **mA Output Fault Action** is set to None, the mA Output signal depends on the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**.

If the device detects a fault condition:

1. **Process Variable Fault Action** is evaluated and applied.
2. **mA Output Fault Action** is evaluated.
   - If it is set to None, the output reports the value associated with the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**.
   - If it is set to any other option, the output performs the specified fault action.

If you want the mA Output to continue to report process data during fault conditions, you must set both **mA Output Fault Action** and **Process Variable Fault Action** to None.

Interaction between Process Variable Fault Action and Frequency Output Fault Action

If **Frequency Output Fault Action** is set to None, the Frequency Output signal depends on the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**.

If the device detects a fault condition:

1. **Process Variable Fault Action** is evaluated and applied.
2. **Frequency Output Fault Action** is evaluated.
   - If it is set to None, the output reports the value associated with the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**.
   - If it is set to any other option, the output performs the specified fault action.

If you want the Frequency Output to continue to report process data during fault conditions, you must set both **Frequency Output Fault Action** and **Process Variable Fault Action** to None.

Interaction between Process Variable Fault Action and Discrete Output Fault Action

If **Discrete Output Fault Action** is set to None and **Discrete Output Source** is set to Flow Rate Switch, the Discrete Output state during a fault depends on the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**.

If the device detects a fault condition:

1. **Process Variable Fault Action** is evaluated and applied.
2. **Discrete Output Fault Action** is evaluated.
   - If it is set to None, and **Discrete Output Source** is set to Flow Rate Switch, the Discrete Output will use the value determined by the current setting of **Process Variable Fault Action** to determine if a flow rate switch has occurred.
   - If **Discrete Output Source** is set to any other option, the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action** is irrelevant to the behavior of the Discrete Output during fault conditions. The Discrete Output is set to the specified fault action.

If you want the Discrete Output to report a flow rate switch appropriately during fault conditions, you must set both **Discrete Output Fault Action** and **Process Variable Fault Action** to None.

Related information

Configure mA Output Fault Action
Configure Frequency Output Fault Action
Configure Discrete Output Fault Action

7 Configure device options and preferences

7.1 Configure the transmitter display

You can control the language used on the display, the process variables shown on the display, and a variety of display behaviors.

7.1.1 Configure the language used on the display

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Display Settings → Language**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Local Display Settings → Transmitter Display → General → Language**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Display Language → Language**

Language controls the language that the display uses for process data, menus, and information.

The languages available depend on your transmitter model and version.

Procedure

Set **Language** to the desired language.

7.1.2 Configure the process variables shown on the display

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Display Settings → Display Variables**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Transmitter Display → Display Variables**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Display Variables**

You can control the process variables shown on the display and the order in which they appear. The display can scroll through up to 15 process variables in any order you choose. This configuration applies to both auto-scroll and manual scrolling.

Restriction

You cannot remove all display variables. At least one display variable must be configured.

Notes

- If you have a display variable configured to show a volume process variable, and you change **Volume Flow Type** to Gas Standard Volume, the display variable is automatically changed to the equivalent GSV variable, and vice versa.
- For all other display variables, if the process variable becomes unavailable due to changes in configuration, the transmitter will not display that variable.

Procedure

For each display variable, select the process variable to be shown in that position in the rotation.

You can skip positions and you can repeat process variables.

Table 7-1: Default configuration for display variables

Display variable	Process variable assignment
Display Variable 1	Mass flow rate

Table 7-1: Default configuration for display variables *(continued)*

Display variable	Process variable assignment
Display Variable 2	Mass total
Display Variable 3	Volume flow rate
Display Variable 4	Volume total
Display Variable 5	Density
Display Variable 6	Temperature
Display Variable 7	Drive gain
Display Variable 8	None
Display Variable 9	None
Display Variable 10	None
Display Variable 11	None
Display Variable 12	None
Display Variable 13	None
Display Variable 14	None
Display Variable 15	None

7.1.3 Configure the number of decimal places (precision) shown on the display

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Display Settings → Decimals on Display**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Transmitter Display → Display Variables → Decimal Places for x**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Decimal Places**

You can specify the precision (the number of decimal places) that the display uses for each display variable. You can set the precision independently for each display variable.

The display precision does not affect the actual value of the variable, the value used in calculations, or the value reported via outputs or digital communications.

Procedure

1. Select a process variable or a diagnostic variable.

   You can configure the precision for all variables, whether or not they are assigned as display variables. The configured precision will be stored and used when applicable.

2. Set **Number of Decimal Places** to the number of decimal places to be used when this variable is shown on the display.
   - Default:
     - Temperature variables: 2
     - All other variables: 4
   - Range: 0 to 5

   Tip
   The lower the precision, the greater the change must be for it to be reflected on the display. Do not set **Number of Decimal Places** too low to be useful.

7.1.4 Turn on and turn off automatic scrolling through the display variables

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Display Settings → Auto Scroll**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Transmitter Display → General → Auto Scroll**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Display Behavior → Auto Scroll**

You can configure the display to automatically scroll through the list of display variables or to show a single display variable until the operator activates **Scroll**. If **Auto Scroll** is turned on, you can configure the number of seconds that each display variable will be shown.

Procedure

1. Turn on or turn off **Auto Scroll** as desired.

Option	Description
On	The display automatically shows each display variable for the number of seconds specified by **Scroll Rate**, then shows the next display variable. The operator can move to the next display variable at any time by activating **Scroll**.
Off	The display shows Display Variable 1 and does not scroll automatically. The operator can move to the next display variable at any time by activating **Scroll**.

   Default: Off

2. If you turned on **Auto Scroll**, set **Scroll Rate** as desired.
   - Default: 10
   - Range: 1 to 30 seconds

   Tip
   Scroll Rate may not be available until you apply **Auto Scroll**.

7.1.5 Configure the display backlight

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Display Settings → Backlight**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Transmitter Display → General → Backlight**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Backlight**

You can set the backlight on the display's LCD panel to either ON or OFF. You can also set **Contrast** as desired (Default: 50).

7.1.6 Configure totalizer control from the display

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Security → Display Security → Totalizer Reset**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Totalizer Control Methods**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Display Behavior**

You can enable or disable the operator's ability to start, stop, or reset totalizers from the display.

Note
Totalizers can be stopped, started, and reset as a group or independently.

This parameter does not affect the operator's ability to start, stop, or reset totalizers using another tool.

Procedure

1. Enable or disable **Reset Totalizers**, as desired.
2. Enable or disable **Start/Stop Totalizers**, as desired.

7.1.7 Configure inventory control from the display

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Security → Display Security → Inventory Reset**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Inventory Control Methods**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Display Behavior**

You can enable or disable the operator's ability to start, stop, or reset inventories from the display.

Note
Inventories can be started and stopped as a group, but must be reset individually. Inventories cannot be started, stopped, or reset from the display by default; you must first manually enable these options before they will appear in the display.

This parameter does not affect the operator's ability to start, stop, or reset inventories using another tool.

Procedure

1. Enable or disable **Reset Inventories**, as desired.
2. Enable or disable **Start/Stop Inventories**, as desired.

7.1.8 Configure security for the display

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Security → Display Security**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Transmitter Display → Display Security**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Display → Display Menus**

You can configure a display passcode, and require the operator to enter the passcode to make any changes to configuration through the display, or to access alert data through the display.

The operator always has read-only access to the configuration menus.

Procedure

1. Enable or disable display security as desired.

Option	Description
Enabled	When an operator chooses an action that leads to a configuration change, they are prompted to enter the display passcode.
Disabled	When an operator chooses an action that leads to a configuration change, they are prompted to activate ⇦⇧⇩⇨. This is designed to protect against accidental changes to configuration. It is not a security measure.

2. If you enabled display security, enable or disable alert security as desired.

Option	Description
Enabled	If an alert is active, the alert symbol ⓘ is shown above the **Menu** button on the display but the alert banner is not displayed. If the operator attempts to enter the alert menu, they are prompted to enter the display passcode.
Disabled	If an alert is active, the alert symbol ⓘ is shown in the upper right corner of the display and the alert banner is displayed automatically. No passcode or confirmation is required to enter the alert menu.

Restriction
You cannot disable display security and enable alert security.

- If you did not enable display security, alert security is disabled and cannot be enabled.
- If both display security and alert security are enabled, and you disable display security, alert security is disabled automatically.

3. Set the display passcode to the desired value.
   - Default: AAAA
   - Range: Any four alphanumeric characters

   If you enable display security but you do not change the display passcode, the transmitter will post a configuration alert.

7.2 Configure the transmitter response to alerts

7.2.1 Configure the transmitter's response to alerts using the display

For some alerts, you can change the transmitter response to an alert by setting the alert severity. You can also configure the transmitter to ignore some alerts and conditions.

The transmitter implements the NAMUR NE 107 specification for alerts. NAMUR NE 107 categorizes alerts by the suggested operator action, not by cause or symptom. Each alert has one or more associated conditions.

Important
The transmitter reports all the process and device conditions that were reported by previous transmitters. However, the transmitter does not report them as individual alerts. Instead, the transmitter reports them as conditions associated with alerts.

Procedure

- To change the severity of an alert:
  a) Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Alert Setup** → **Response to Alerts**.
  b) Select the alert.
  c) Set **Alert Severity** as desired.

Option	Description
Failure	The event is serious enough to require fault actions by the transmitter. The event may be either device-related or process-related. Operator action is strongly recommended.
Function Check	Configuration change or device testing. No fault actions are performed. The operator may need to complete a procedure.
Out of Specification	The process is outside user-specified limits or device limits. No fault actions are performed. The operator should check the process.
Maintenance Required	Device maintenance is recommended, either near-term or mid-term.

- To ignore an alert:
  a) Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Alert Setup** → **Response to Alerts**
  b) Select the alert.
  c) Set **Alert Detection** to Ignore.

  If an alert is ignored, any occurrence of this alert is not posted to the alert list and the alert banner is not shown on the display.
- To ignore a condition:
  a) Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Alert Setup** → **Response to Alerts**
  b) Select the alert associated with the condition.
  c) Select Condition Detection.
  d) Select the condition and set it to Ignore.

  If a condition is ignored, any occurrence of this condition is not posted to the alert list and the status LED on the transmitter does not change color. The occurrence is posted to alert history.

7.2.2 Configure the transmitter response to alerts using ProLink III

For some alerts, you can change the transmitter response to an alert by setting the alert severity. You can also configure the transmitter to ignore some alerts and conditions.

The transmitter implements the NAMUR NE 107 specification for alerts. NAMUR NE 107 categorizes alerts by the suggested operator action, not by cause or symptom. Each alert has one or more associated conditions.

Important
The transmitter reports all the process and device conditions that were reported by previous transmitters. However, the transmitter does not report them as individual alerts. Instead, the transmitter reports them as conditions associated with alerts.

Procedure

- To change the severity of an alert:
  a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Alert Severity**.

b) Select the alert.

c) Set the severity as desired.

Option	Description
Failure	The event is serious enough to require fault actions by the transmitter. The event may be either device-related or process-related. Operator action is strongly recommended.
Function Check	Configuration change or device testing. No fault actions are performed. The operator may need to complete a procedure.
Out of Specification	The process is outside user-specified limits or device limits. No fault actions are performed. The operator should check the process.
Maintenance Required	Device maintenance is recommended, either near-term or mid-term.

- To ignore an alert:
  a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Alert Severity**.
  b) Select the alert.
  c) Set the severity to Ignore.

  If an alert is ignored, any occurrence of this alert is not posted to the alert list and the status LED on the transmitter does not change color. The occurrence is posted to alert history.
- To ignore a condition:
  a) Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Alert Setup** → **Response to Alerts**.
  b) Select the alert associated with the condition and expand it.
  c) Select the condition and set it to Ignore.

  If a condition is ignored, any occurrence of this condition is not posted to the alert list and the status LED on the transmitter does not change color. The occurrence is posted to alert history.

7.2.3 Configure the transmitter response to alerts using a field communicator

For some alerts, you can change the transmitter response to an alert by setting the alert severity. You can also configure the transmitter to ignore some alerts and conditions.

The transmitter implements the NAMUR NE 107 specification for alerts. NAMUR NE 107 categorizes alerts by the suggested operator action, not by cause or symptom. Each alert has one or more associated conditions.

Important
The transmitter reports all the process and device conditions that were reported by previous transmitters. However, the transmitter does not report them as individual alerts. Instead, the transmitter reports them as conditions associated with alerts.

Procedure

- To change the severity of an alert:
  a) Choose **Configure** → **Alert Setup**.
  b) Choose the category of the alert: Sensor, Configuration, Process, or Output.
  c) Select the alert.
  d) Set the severity as desired.

Option	Description
Failure	The event is serious enough to require fault actions by the transmitter. The event may be either device-related or process-related. Operator action is strongly recommended.
Function Check	Configuration change or device testing. No fault actions are performed. The operator may need to complete a procedure.
Out of Specification	The process is outside user-specified limits or device limits. No fault actions are performed. The operator should check the process.
Maintenance Required	Device maintenance is recommended, either near-term or mid-term.

- To ignore an alert:
  a) Choose **Configure** → **Alert Setup**.
  b) Choose the category of the alert: Sensor, Configuration, Process, or Output.
  c) Select the alert.
  d) Set the severity to No Effect.

  If an alert is ignored, any occurrence of this alert is not posted to the alert list and the status LED on the transmitter does not change color. The occurrence is posted to alert history.
- To ignore a condition:
  a) Choose **Configure** → **Alert Setup**.
  b) Choose the category of the alert: Sensor, Configuration, Process, or Output.
  c) Select the alert.
  d) Choose **Set Conditions**.
  e) Select the condition and set it to OFF.

  If a condition is ignored, any occurrence of this condition is not posted to the alert list and the status LED on the transmitter does not change color. The occurrence is posted to alert history.

7.2.4 Configure Fault Timeout

Display	**Menu** → **Alert Setup** → **Output Fault Actions** → **Fault Timeout (sec)**
ProLink III	**Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Fault Processing** → **Fault Timeout**
Field communicator	**Configure** → **Alert Setup** → **Output Fault Actions** → **General** → **Fault Timeout**

Fault Timeout controls the delay before fault actions are performed.

The fault timeout period begins when the transmitter detects an alert condition.

- During the fault timeout period, the transmitter continues to report its last valid measurements.
- If the fault timeout period expires while the alert is still active, the fault actions are performed.
- If the alert condition clears before the fault timeout expires, no fault actions are performed.

Restriction

- **Fault Timeout** is not applied to all alerts. For some alerts, fault actions are performed as soon as the alert condition is detected. See the list of alerts and conditions for details.
- **Fault Timeout** is applicable only when **Alert Severity** = Failure. For all other settings of **Alert Severity**, **Fault Timeout** is irrelevant.

Procedure

Set **Fault Timeout** as desired.

- Default: 0 seconds
- Range: 0 to 60 seconds

If you set **Fault Timeout** to 0, fault actions are performed as soon as the alert condition is detected.

7.2.5 Alerts, conditions, and configuration options

Table 7-2: Options for alerts and conditions

Alert	Conditions		
	Name	**Description**	**Ignorable**
Electronics Failed • Default severity: Failure • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: No	[018] EEPROM Error (Transmitter)	There is an internal memory problem with the transmitter.	No
	[019] RAM Error (Transmitter)	There is a ROM checksum mismatch in the transmitter or the RAM address location cannot be written in the transmitter.	No
	Watchdog Error	The watchdog timer has expired.	No
	Verification of mA Output 1 Failed	The reading of the mA input does not match the reading of mA Output 1.	No
Sensor Failed • Default severity: Failure • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: Yes	[003] Sensor Failed	The pickoff amplitude is too low.	No
	[016] Sensor Temperature (RTD) Failure	The value computed for the resistance of the line RTD is outside limits.	No
	[017] Sensor Case Temperature (RTD) Failure	The values computed for the resistance of the meter and case RTDs are outside limits.	No
Configuration Error • Default severity: Failure • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: Yes	[020] Calibration Factors Missing	Some calibration factors have not been entered or are incorrect.	No
	[021] Incorrect Sensor Type	Transmitter verification of sensor circuits and characterization has produced a discrepancy. The transmitter cannot operate the sensor.	Yes
	[030] Incorrect Board Type	The firmware or configuration loaded in the transmitter is incompatible with the board type.	No
	Password Not Set	Display security has been enabled but the display password has not been changed from the default value.	No
	Time Not Entered	The system time has not been entered. The system time is required for diagnostic logs.	Yes
	[120] Curve Fit Failure (Concentration)	The transmitter was unable to calculate a valid concentration matrix from the current data.	No

Table 7-2: Options for alerts and conditions *(continued)*

Alert	Conditions		
	Name	**Description**	**Ignorable**
Tube Not Full • Default severity: Failure • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: Yes	[033] Insufficient Pickoff Signal	The signal from the sensor pickoffs is insufficient for operation.	Yes
Extreme Primary Purpose Variable • Default severity: Failure • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: Yes	[005] Mass Flow Rate Overrange	The measured flow is outside the sensor's flow limits.	No
	[008] Density Overrange	The measured density is above 10 g/cm^3.	No
Transmitter Initializing • Default severity: Failure • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: No	[009] Transmitter Initializing/ Warming Up	The transmitter is in power-up mode.	No
Function Check in Progress • Default severity: Function Check • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: No	[104] Calibration in Progress	A calibration is running.	No
	[131] Meter Verification in Progress	A meter verification test is running.	Yes
Sensor Being Simulated • Default severity: Function Check • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: No	[132] Sensor Simulation Active	Sensor simulation mode is enabled.	No
Output Fixed • Default severity: Function Check • Severity configurable: No • Fault Timeout applicable: No	[101] mA Output 1 Fixed	The HART address is set to a non-zero value, a loop test is running, or the output is configured to send a constant value (**mA Output Action** or **Loop Current Mode**).	Yes
	[114] mA Output 2 Fixed	The output is configured to send a constant value. A loop test may be in progress.	No
	[111] Frequency Output 1 Fixed	The output is configured to send a constant value. A loop test may be in progress.	No
	Frequency Output 2 Fixed	The output is configured to send a constant value. A loop test may be in progress.	No
	[118] Discrete Output 1 Fixed	The output is set to a constant state. A loop test may be in progress.	No
	[119] Discrete Output 2 Fixed	The output is set to a constant state. A loop test may be in progress.	No

Table 7-2: Options for alerts and conditions *(continued)*

Alert	Conditions		
	Name	**Description**	**Ignorable**
Drive Over-Range • Default severity: Maintenance Required • Severity configurable: Yes • Fault Timeout applicable: Yes	[102] Drive Overrange	The drive power (current/voltage) is at its maximum.	Yes
Process Aberration • Default severity: Out of Specification • Severity configurable: Yes • Fault Timeout applicable: Yes	[105] Two-Phase Flow	The line density is outside the user-defined two-phase flow limits.	Yes
	[115] External Input Error	The connection to an external measurement device has failed. No external data is available.	Yes
	[121] Extrapolation Alert (Concentration)	The line density or line temperature is outside the range of the concentration matrix plus the configured extrapolation limit.	Yes
	[116] Temperature Overrange (API referral)	The line temperature is outside the range of the API table.	Yes
	[117] Density Overrange (API referral)	The line density is outside the range of the API table.	Yes
	[123] Pressure Overrange (API referral)	The line pressure is outside the range of the API table.	Yes
	Moderate Two-Phase Flow	The transmitter has detected moderate two-phase flow.	Yes
	Severe Two-Phase Flow	The transmitter has detected severe two-phase flow.	Yes
Event Active • Default severity: Out of Specification • Severity configurable: Yes • Fault Timeout applicable: Yes	Enhanced Event 1 Active	The conditions assigned to Enhanced Event 1 are present.	Yes
	Enhanced Event 2 Active	The conditions assigned to Enhanced Event 1 are present.	Yes
	Enhanced Event 2 Active	The conditions assigned to Enhanced Event 2 are present.	Yes
	Enhanced Event 3 Active	The conditions assigned to Enhanced Event 3 are present.	Yes
	Enhanced Event 4 Active	The conditions assigned to Enhanced Event 4 are present.	Yes
	Enhanced Event 5 Active	The conditions assigned to Enhanced Event 5 are present.	Yes
Output Saturated • Default severity: Out of Specification • Severity configurable: Yes • Fault Timeout applicable: No	[100] mA Output 1 Saturated	The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.	Yes
	[113] mA Output 2 Saturated	The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.	Yes
	[110] Frequency Output 1 Saturated	The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.	Yes
	Frequency Output 2 Saturated	The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.	Yes

Table 7-2: Options for alerts and conditions *(continued)*

Alert	Conditions		
	Name	**Description**	**Ignorable**
Function Check Failed or Meter Verification Aborted • Default severity: Maintenance Required • Severity configurable: Yes • Fault Timeout applicable: No	[010] Calibration Failed	The calibration failed.	No
	[034] Meter Verification Failed	The meter verification test showed that the sensor response was not acceptably close to the baseline.	Yes
	[035] Meter Verification Aborted	The meter verification test did not complete, possibly because it was manually aborted or because process conditions were too unstable.	Yes
Configuration Warning • Default severity: Maintenance Required • Severity configurable: Yes • Fault Timeout applicable: No	No Permanent License	A permanent license has not been installed in the transmitter firmware.	No
	Clock Failure	The transmitter's real-time clock is not incrementing.	No
	Transmitter Software Update Failed	The transmitter software update failed.	Yes

8 Integrate the meter with the control system

8.1 Configure the transmitter channels

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x***
ProLink	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Channels → Channel *x***
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x***

Your transmitter uses Channels A, B and C to support the control system and communications. Channel A and Channel B are configurable.

Depending on your purchase order, some channels may not be activated on your device. To see which channels are activated:

- Using the display: **Menu → About → Licenses**
- Using ProLink: **Device Information**
- Using a field communicator: **Overview → Device Information → Licenses → Permanent Feature Set → Input/Output Channels**

To activate additional channels, contact customer service.

The channel configuration must match the I/O wiring.

Prerequisites

Important
To avoid causing process errors:

- Configure the channels before configuring the outputs.
- Before changing the channel configuration, ensure that all control loops affected by the channel are under manual control.

If you plan to use dual-pulse mode, configure Channel B as Frequency Output 1 and Channel A as Frequency Output 2. Refer to Configure Frequency Output Mode (dual-pulse mode).

Procedure

1. Identify the channels that are activated on your device.
2. For Channel A, if activated, set **Channel Type** as desired.

Channel	Options
Channel A	• mA Output 1 / HART (default) • Frequency Output 2 • Discrete Output 2

3. For Channel B, if activated, set **Channel Type** as desired.

Channel	Options
Channel B	• mA Output 2 • Frequency Output 1 (default) • Discrete Output 1 • Discrete Input 1

4. For Channel C if activated, set **Channel Type** to RS-485.

Channel	Option
Channel C	RS-485 Modbus

Postrequisites

For each channel that you configured, perform or verify the corresponding output configuration. When the configuration of a channel is changed, the channel's behavior will be controlled by the configuration that is stored for the selected output type, and the stored configuration may not be appropriate for your process.

After verifying channel and output configuration, return the control loop to automatic control.

8.2 Configure the mA Outputs

The mA Outputs are used to report current values of process variables. The mA signal varies between 4 mA and 20 mA in proportion to the current value of the assigned process variable.

Depending on your purchase order and channel configuration, your transmitter may have 1-2 mA Outputs. If assigned as mA, Channel A is mA Output 1. If assigned as mA, Channel B is mA Output 2.

Note
Channel A also supports HART/Bell 202 communications, superimposed on the mA signal. HART is not available on Channel B.

8.2.1 Configure mA Output Source

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Source**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output *x***
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mAO*x*Source**

mA Output Source specifies the process variable that is reported by an mA Output.

Prerequisites

- If you plan to configure the output to report volume flow, ensure that you have set **Volume Flow Type** as desired: Liquid or Gas Standard Volume.
- If you plan to configure an output to report a concentration measurement process variable, API Referral, or Advance Phase Measurement process variable, ensure that the concentration measurement application, API Referral, or Advance Phase Measurement application respectively, is configured so that the desired variable is available.

Procedure

Set **mA Output Process Variable** as desired.

Postrequisites

If you change the configuration of **mA Output Source**, verify the settings of **Lower Range Value** and **Upper Range Value**. The transmitter automatically loads a set of values, and these values may not be appropriate for your application.

Options for mA Output Source

The transmitter provides a basic set of options for **mA Output Source**, plus several application-specific options. Different communications tools may use different labels for the options.

Process variable	Label		
	Display	ProLink III	Field communicator
Standard			
Mass flow rate	Mass Flow Rate	Mass Flow Rate	Mass Flow Rate
Volume flow rate	Volume Flow Rate	Volume Flow Rate	Volume Flow Rate
Gas standard volume flow rate	GSV Flow Rate	Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate	Gas Standard Volume Flow
Temperature	Temperature	Temperature	Temperature
Density	Density	Density	Density
External pressure	External Pressure	External Pressure	External pressure
External temperature	External Temperature	External Temperature	External temperature
Diagnostics			
Velocity	Velocity	Velocity	Approximate Velocity
Two-phase flow detection	Phase	Phase Flow Severity	Two-Phase Flow Detection
Drive gain	Drive Gain	Drive Gain	Drive Gain
API Referral			
Temperature-corrected density	Referred Density	Density at Reference Temperature	Density at Reference Temperature
Temperature-corrected (standard) volume flow rate	Referred Volume Flow	Volume Flow Rate at Reference Temperature	Referred Volume Flow Rate
Average temperature-corrected density	Average Line Density	Average Density	Average Observed Density
Average temperature	Average Temperature	Average Temperature	Average Temperature
Concentration measurement			
Density at reference	Referred Density	Density at Reference Temperature	Dens at Ref (CM)
Specific gravity	Specific Gravity	Density (Fixed SG Units)	Spec Gravity (CM)
Standard volume flow rate	Standard Vol Flow	Volume Flow Rate at Reference Temperature	Stnadard Volume Flow Rate
Net mass flow rate	Net Mass Flow	Net Mass Flow Rate	Net Mass Flow (CM)
Net volume flow rate	Net Volume Flow Rate	Net Volume Flow Rate	Net Volume Flow Rate (CM)
Concentration	Concentration	Concentration	Concentration (CM)
Baume	Baume	Baume	Baume (CM)

8.2.2 Configure Lower Range Value (LRV) and Upper Range Value (URV) for an mA Output

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Lower Range Value** **Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Upper Range Value**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output → Lower Range Value** **Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output → Upper Range Value**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mA Output *x*Settings → Lower Range Value** **Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mA Output *x*Settings → Upper Range Value**

The **Lower Range Value** (LRV) and **Upper Range Value** (URV) are used to scale an mA Output, that is, to define the relationship between **mA Output Process Variable** and the mA Output signal.

LRV is the value of **mA Output Source** represented by an output of 4 mA. **URV** is the value of **mA Output Source** represented by an output of 20 mA. Between **LRV** and **URV**, an mA Output is linear with the process variable. If the process variable drops below **LRV** or rises above **URV**, the transmitter posts an output saturation alert.

Procedure

Set **LRV** and **URV** as desired.

Enter **LRV** and **URV** in the measurement units used for **mA Output Source**.

- Defaults: Specific to each process variable
- Range: Unlimited

Note
You can set **URV** below **LRV**. For example, you can set **URV** to `50` and **LRV** to `100`. If you do this, an mA Output will be inversely proportional to the value of **mA Output Source**.

8.2.3 Configure mA Output Direction

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Direction**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output *x* → Direction**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mAO*x* Fault Settings → mAO*x* Direction**

mA Output Direction controls how conditions of forward flow and reverse flow affect the flow rates reported by an mA Output.

Actual flow direction interacts with **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** to determine the flow direction that the transmitter uses in processing. See the following table.

Table 8-1: Interaction between actual flow direction and Sensor Flow Direction Arrow

Actual flow direction	Setting of Sensor Flow Direction Arrow	Flow direction sent to outputs and totalizers
Forward (same direction as Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Forward
	Against Arrow	Reverse
Reverse (opposite from Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Reverse
	Against Arrow	Forward

Procedure

Set **mA Output Direction** as desired.

Option	Description
Normal (default)	Appropriate when your application needs to distinguish between forward flow and reverse flow.
Absolute Value	Appropriate when your application does not need to distinguish between forward flow and reverse flow.

Important
mA Output Direction interacts with **Lower Range Value** (LRV). The effect of **mA Output Direction** on an mA Output varies, depending on whether LRV < 0 or LRV ≥ 0.

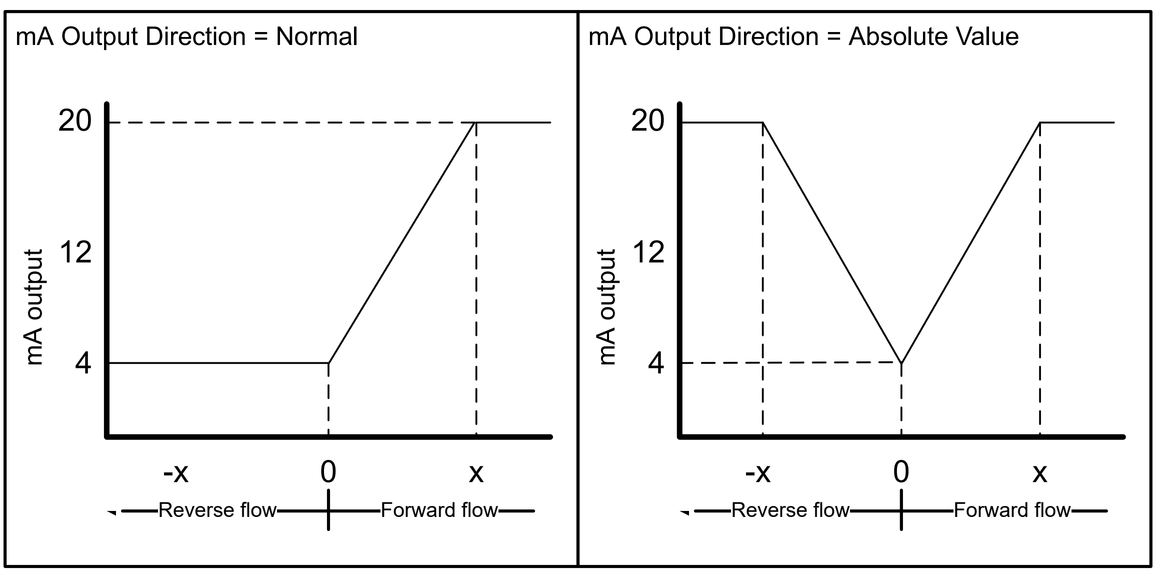
Effect of mA Output Direction on an mA Output

mA Output Direction affects how the transmitter reports flow values via an mA Output. An mA Output is affected by **mA Output Direction** only if **mA Output Source** is set to a flow variable.

The effect of **mA Output Direction** depends on the setting of **Lower Range Value** (LRV).

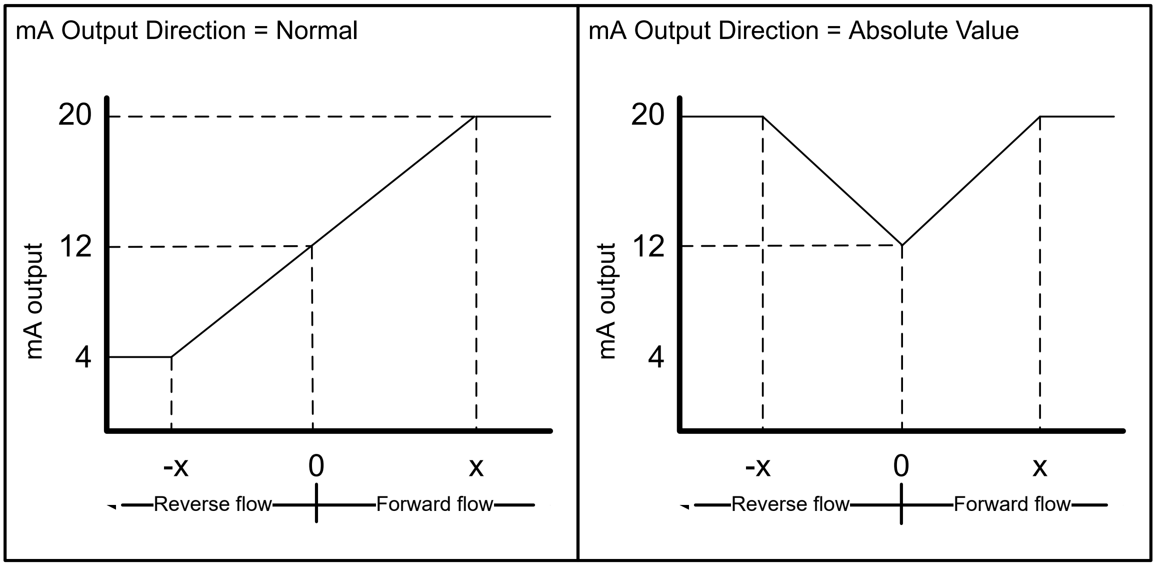
- If **Lower Range Value** = 0, see Figure 8-1.
- If **Lower Range Value** > 0, see Figure 8-1 and adapt the chart.
- If **Lower Range Value** < 0, see Figure 8-2.

Figure 8-1: Effect of mA Output Direction on an mA Output: Lower Range Value = 0



- **Lower Range Value** = 0
- **Upper Range Value** = x

Figure 8-2: Effect of mA Output Direction on an mA Output: Lower Range Value < 0



- **Lower Range Value** = −x
- **Upper Range Value** = x

Example: mA Output Direction = Normal and Lower Range Value = 0

Configuration:

- **mA Output Direction** = Normal
- **Lower Range Value** = 0 g/sec
- **Upper Range Value** = 100 g/sec

Result:

- Under conditions of reverse flow or zero flow, an mA Output is 4 mA.
- Under conditions of forward flow, up to a flow rate of 100 g/sec, an mA Output varies between 4 mA and 20 mA in proportion to the flow rate.
- Under conditions of forward flow, if the flow rate equals or exceeds 100 g/sec, an mA Output will be proportional to the flow rate up to 20.5 mA, and will be level at 20.5 mA at higher flow rates.

Example: mA Output Direction = Normal and Lower Range Value < 0

Configuration:

- **mA Output Direction** = Normal
- **Lower Range Value** = −100 g/sec
- **Upper Range Value** = +100 g/sec

Result:

- Under conditions of zero flow, an mA Output is 12 mA.
- Under conditions of forward flow, for flow rates between 0 and +100 g/sec, an mA Output varies between 12 mA and 20 mA in proportion to (the absolute value of) the flow rate.
- Under conditions of forward flow, if (the absolute value of) the flow rate equals or exceeds 100 g/sec, an mA Output is proportional to the flow rate up to 20.5 mA, and will be level at 20.5 mA at higher flow rates.
- Under conditions of reverse flow, for flow rates between 0 and −100 g/sec, an mA Output varies between 4 mA and 12 mA in inverse proportion to the absolute value of the flow rate.
- Under conditions of reverse flow, if the absolute value of the flow rate equals or exceeds 100 g/sec, an mA Output is inversely proportional to the flow rate down to 3.8 mA, and will be level at 3.8 mA at higher absolute values.

8.2.4 Configure mA Output Cutoff

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → MAO Cutoff**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output *x* → Flow Rate Cutoff**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mA Output *x* Settings → mAO Flow Rate Cutoff**

mA Output Cutoff specifies the lowest flow rate that will be reported through an mA Output. All flow rates below the specified value are reported as 0.

mA Output Cutoff is applicable only when **mA Output Source** is set to a flow rate variable. It is applied to whatever flow variable is assigned to an mA Output.

Procedure

Set **mA Output Cutoff** as desired.

Set **mA Output Cutoff** in the measurement units used for the process variable. If you change the measurement unit, **mA Output Cutoff** is adjusted automatically.

- Default: 0
- Range: 0 or any positive value

Tip
For most applications the default value of **mA Output Cutoff** should be used. Contact customer service before changing **mA Output Cutoff**.

Interaction between mA Output Cutoff and process variable cutoffs

When **mA Output Process Variable** is set to a flow variable (for example, mass flow rate or volume flow rate), **mA Output Cutoff** interacts with **Mass Flow Cutoff** or **Volume Flow Cutoff**. The transmitter puts the cutoff into effect at the highest flow rate at which a cutoff is applicable.

8.2.5 Configure mA Output Damping

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → MAO Damping**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output *x* → Added Damping**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mA Output *x* Settings → Added Damping**

mA Output Damping controls the amount of damping that will be applied to the mA Output.

Damping is used to smooth out small, rapid fluctuations in process measurement. The damping value specifies the time period, in seconds, over which the transmitter will spread changes in the process variable. At the end of the interval, the value reported by an mA Output will reflect 63% of the change in the actual measured value.

mA Output Damping affects a process variable only when it is reported via the mA Output. If the process variable is read from the display or digitally, **mA Output Damping** is not applied.

Procedure

Set **mA Output Damping** to the desired value.

- Default: 0.0 seconds
- Range: 0.0 to 440 seconds

Tip

- A high damping value makes the process variable appear smoother because the reported value changes slowly.
- A low damping value makes the process variable appear more erratic because the reported value changes more quickly.
- The combination of a high damping value and rapid, large changes in the process variable assigned to an mA Output can result in increased measurement error.
- Whenever the damping value is non-zero, the damped value will lag the actual measurement because the damped value is being averaged over time.
- In general, lower damping values are preferable because there is less chance of data loss, and less lag time between the actual measurement and the damped value.

Interaction between mA Output Damping and process variable damping

When **mA Output Source** is set to a flow rate variable, density, or temperature, **mA Output Damping** interacts with **Flow Damping**, **Density Damping**, or **Temperature Damping**. If multiple damping parameters are applicable, the effect of damping the process variable is calculated first, and the mA Output damping calculation is applied to the result of that calculation.

Example: Damping interaction

Configuration:

- **Flow Damping** = `1` second
- **mA Output Source** = Mass Flow Rate

- **mA Output Damping** = 2 seconds

Result: A change in the mass flow rate will be reflected in the mA Output over a time period that is greater than 3 seconds. The exact time period is calculated by the transmitter according to internal algorithms which are not configurable.

8.2.6 Configure mA Output Fault Action

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Fault Action**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → mA Output *x* → Fault Action**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → mA Output *x* → mAO*x*Fault Settings → mAO*x* Fault Action**

mA Output Fault Action controls the behavior of the mA Output if the transmitter detects a fault condition.

Important

- The fault action is implemented only if **Alert Severity** is set to Failure. If **Alert Severity** is set to any other option, the fault action is not implemented.
- For some faults only: If **Fault Timeout** is set to a non-zero value, the transmitter will not implement the fault action until the timeout has elapsed.

Procedure

1. Set **mA Output Fault Action** as desired.

   Default: Downscale

   Important
   If you set **mA Output Fault Action** to None, the mA Output will be controlled by the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**. In most cases, if you set **mA Output Fault Action** to None, you should also set **Process Variable Fault Action** to None.

2. If you set **mA Output Fault Action** to **Upscale** or **Downscale**, set **mA Output Fault Level** to the signal that the mA Output will produce during a fault.

Options for mAO Fault Action and mAO Fault Level

Option	mA Output behavior	mA Output Fault Level
Upscale	Goes to the configured fault level	Default: 22.0 mA Range: 21.0 to 23.0 mA
Downscale (default)	Goes to the configured fault level	
Internal Zero	Goes to the mA Output level associated with a process variable value of 0 (zero), as determined by **Lower Range Value** and **Upper Range Value** settings	Not applicable
None	Determined by the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**	Not applicable

8.3 Configure the Frequency Output

The Frequency Output is used to report current values of process variables. The frequency varies between 0 Hz and 10,000 Hz in proportion to the current value of the assigned process variable.

Depending on your purchase order and channel configuration, your transmitter may have 0, 1, or 2 Frequency Outputs. Channel A can be configured as Frequency Output 2. Channel B can be configured as Frequency Output 1.

8.3.1 Configure Frequency Output Source

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Source**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Frequency Output *x***
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Frequency Output *x***

Frequency Output Source specifies the process variable that is reported by the Frequency Output.

Prerequisites

- If you plan to configure the output to report volume flow, ensure that you have set **Volume Flow Type** as desired: Liquid or Gas Standard Volume.
- If you plan to configure an output to report a concentration measurement process variable, ensure that the concentration measurement application is configured so that the desired variable is available.

Procedure

Set **Frequency Output Source** as desired.

Postrequisites

If you change the configuration of **Frequency Output Source**, verify the Frequency Output scaling. The transmitter automatically loads the most recent values for the scaling parameters, and they may not be appropriate for your application.

Options for Frequency Output Source

The transmitter provides a basic set of options for **Frequency Output Source**, plus several application-specific options. Different communications tools may use different labels for the options.

Process variable	**Label**		
	Display	**PLIII**	**Field communicator**
Standard			
Mass flow rate	Mass Flow Rate	Mass Flow Rate	Mass Flow Rate
Volume flow rate	Volume Flow Rate	Volume Flow Rate	Volume Flow Rate
Gas standard volume flow rate	GSV Flow Rate	Gas Standard Volume Flow Rate	GSV Flow Rate
Frequency Input flow rate	FI Flow Rate	Not available	Not available
API referral			
Temperature-corrected (standard) volume flow rate	Referred Volume Flow	Volume Flow Rate at Reference Temperature	Referred Volume Flow Rate
Concentration measurement			
Standard volume flow rate	Standard Vol Flow	Volume Flow Rate at Reference Temperature	Standard Volume Flow Rate

Process variable	Label		
	Display	**PLIII**	**Field communicator**
Net mass flow rate	Net Mass Flow	Net Mass Flow Rate	Net Mass Flow (CM)
Net volume flow rate	Net Volume Flow Rate	Net Volume Flow Rate	Net Volume Flow Rate (CM)
Energy measurement			
Energy flow	Energy Flow	Energy Flow	

8.3.2 Configure Frequency Output Scaling

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel x → Frequency Output x → Scaling Method**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Frequency Output x → Scaling Method**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Frequency Output *x* → FO*x*Scaling**

Frequency output scaling defines the relationship between **Frequency Output Source** and the pulse of the Frequency Output. Scale the Frequency Output to provide the data in the form required by your frequency receiving device.

Procedure

1. Set **Frequency Output Scaling Method**.

Option	Description
Frequency=Flow (default)	Frequency calculated from flow rate
Pulses/Unit	A user-specified number of pulses represents one flow unit
Units/Pulse	A pulse represents a user-specified number of flow units

2. Set additional required parameters.
    - If you set **Frequency Output Scaling Method** to Frequency=Flow, set **Rate Factor** and **Frequency Factor**.
    - If you set **Frequency Output Scaling Method** to Pulses/Unit, define the number of pulses that will represent one flow unit.
    - If you set **Frequency Output Scaling Method** to Units/Pulse, define the number of units that each pulse will indicate.

Calculate frequency from flow rate

The Frequency=Flow option is used to customize the Frequency Output for your application when you do not know appropriate values for Units/Pulse or Pulses/Unit.

If you specify Frequency=Flow, you must provide values for **Rate Factor** and **Frequency Factor**:

Rate Factor The maximum flow rate that you want the Frequency Output to report.

Frequency Factor A value calculated as follows:

$$FrequencyFactor \frac{RateFactor}{T} \times N$$

where:

T Factor to convert selected time base to seconds

N Number of pulses per flow unit, as configured in the receiving device

The resulting **Frequency Factor** must be within the range of the Frequency Output :

- If **Frequency Factor** is less than 1 Hz, reconfigure the receiving device for a higher pulses/unit setting.

8.3.3 Configure Frequency Output Direction

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel x → I/O Settings → Direction**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Frequency Output x → Direction**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Frequency Output *x* → FO*x*Settings**

Frequency Output Direction controls how conditions of forward flow and reverse flow affect the flow rates reported by the Frequency Output.

Actual flow direction interacts with **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** to determine the flow direction that the transmitter uses in processing. See the following table.

Table 8-2: Interaction between actual flow direction and Sensor Flow Direction Arrow

Actual flow direction	Setting of Sensor Flow Direction Arrow	Flow direction sent to outputs and totalizers
Forward (same direction as Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Forward
	Against Arrow	Reverse
Reverse (opposite from Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Reverse
	Against Arrow	Forward

Procedure

Set **Frequency Output Direction** as desired.

Option	Description
Positive Flow Only	• Forward flow: The Frequency Output reports the flow rate according to the configured scaling method. • Reverse flow: The Frequency Output is 0 Hz.
Negative Flow Only	• Forward flow: The Frequency Output is 0 Hz. • Reverse flow: The Frequency Output reports the absolute value of the flow rate according to the configured scaling method.
Both Positive and Negative Flow	The Frequency Output reports the absolute value of the flow rate according to the configured scaling method. It is not possible to distinguish between forward flow and reverse flow from the Frequency Output alone. This setting is typically used in combination with a discrete output configured to report flow direction.

8.3.4 Configure Frequency Output Mode (dual-pulse mode)

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel x → I/O Settings → Dual-Pulse Mode**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Frequency Output Mode**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Frequency Output *x* → Mode**

If you have two frequency outputs, **Frequency Output Mode** defines the relationship between their signals. **Frequency Output Mode** is used to implement dual-pulse mode or quadrature mode.

Restriction
If you do not have two frequency outputs on your transmitter, **Frequency Output Mode** is set to Independent and cannot be changed.

Important
If **Frequency Output Mode** is set to anything other than Independent:

- The configuration of Frequency Output 1 is applied to Frequency Output 2.
- Any configuration parameters set for Frequency Output 2 are ignored.
- Status information for Frequency Output 2 is ignored.

Prerequisites

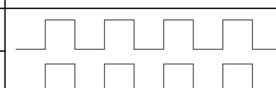
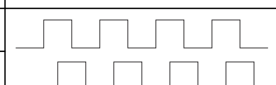
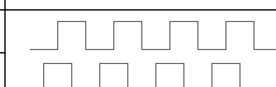
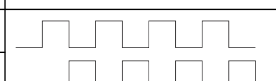
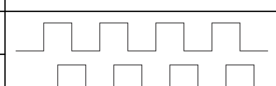
If you want to use dual-pulse mode:

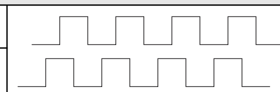
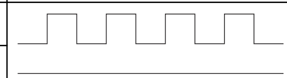
- Channel B must be configured as Frequency Output 1.

Procedure

Set **Frequency Output Mode** as desired.

Options for Frequency Output Mode

Option	Process condition and effect	Channel behavior	
Independent	No relationship between the two outputs	Frequency Output 1 Frequency Output 2	
In-Phase 50% duty cycle	Signals are aligned	Frequency Output 1 Frequency Output 2	
90° Phase Shift 50% duty cycle	Frequency Output 1 leads Frequency Output 2 by 90°	Frequency Output 1 Frequency Output 2	
–90° Phase Shift 50% duty cycle	Frequency Output 1 lags Frequency Output 2 by 90°	Frequency Output 1 Frequency Output 2	
180° Phase Shift 50% duty cycle	Frequency Output 1 leads Frequency Output 2 by 180°	Frequency Output 1 Frequency Output 2	
Quadrature [(1)] 50% duty cycle	Forward flow, as determined by the setting of **Sensor Direction** and actual flow direction Frequency Output 1 leads Frequency Output 2 by 90°	Frequency Output 1 Frequency Output 2	

Option	Process condition and effect	Channel behavior	
	Reverse flow, as determined by the setting of **Sensor Direction** and actual flow direction Frequency Output 1 lags Frequency Output 2 by 90°	Frequency Output 1	
		Frequency Output 2	
	Fault Frequency Output 1 performs the configured fault action Frequency Output 2 is driven to 0	Frequency Output 1	
		Frequency Output 2	

(1) Quadrature mode is used only for specific Weights & Measures applications where required by law.

8.3.5 Configure Frequency Output Fault Action

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Alert Setup → Output Fault Actions → Fault Action**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Frequency Output x → Fault Action**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Frequency Output *x* → FO*x*Fault Settings → FO*x* Fault Action**

Frequency Output Fault Action controls the behavior of the frequency output if the transmitter detects a fault condition.

Important

- The fault action is implemented only if **Alert Severity** is set to Failure. If **Alert Severity** is set to any other option, the fault action is not implemented.
- For some faults only: If **Fault Timeout** is set to a non-zero value, the transmitter will not implement the fault action until the timeout has elapsed.

Procedure

1. Set **Frequency Output Fault Action** as desired.
   - Default: Downscale

   Important
   If you set **Frequency Output Fault Action** to None, the frequency output will be controlled by the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**. In most cases, if you set **Frequency Output Fault Action** to None, you should also set **Process Variable Fault Action** to None.

2. If you set **Frequency Output Fault Action** to Upscale, set **Frequency Fault Level** to the desired value.
   - Default: 14500 Hz
   - Range: 10 Hz to 14500 Hz

Options for Frequency Output Fault Action

Label	Frequency Output behavior
Upscale	Goes to configured Upscale value: pro • Default: 14500 Hz • Range: 10 Hz to 14500 Hz
Downscale	0 Hz

Label	Frequency Output behavior
Internal Zero	0 Hz
None (default)	Determined by the setting of **Process Variable Fault Action**

8.4 Configure the Discrete Output

The Discrete Output is used to report specific meter or process conditions.

Depending on your purchase order and channel configuration, you may have 0, 1, or 2 discrete outputs on the transmitter. Channel A can be configured as Discrete Output 2 and Channel B can be configured as Discrete Output 1.

8.4.1 Configure Discrete Output Source

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel x → I/O Settings → Source**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Discrete Output → Source**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel x → Discrete Output x → DOx Source**

Discrete Output Source specifies the process condition or device condition that is reported by a Discrete Output.

Procedure

Set **Discrete Output Source** to the desired option.

Default: Forward/Reverse

Postrequisites

If you set **Discrete Output Source** to Flow Switch, additional configuration is required.

Options for Discrete Output Source

Option	Label			State	DO voltage
	Display	PLIII	Field communicator		
Enhanced Event 1–5 (1)	Basic Event x	Enhanced Event x	Discrete Event x	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V
Event 1–2 (2)	Enhanced Event x	Event x	Event x	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V
Flow Rate Switch	Flow Rate Switch	Flow Switch Indicator	Flow Switch	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V

Option	Label			State	DO voltage
	Display	PLIII	Field communicator		
Forward/ Reverse Indicator	Flow Direction	Forward Reverse Indicator	Forward/ Reverse	Forward flow	0 V
				Reverse flow	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
Calibration in Progress	Zero in Progress	Calibration in Progress	Cal in Progress	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V
Fault	Fault	Fault Indication	Fault Condition Present	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V
Meter Verification Failure	Meter Verification Fail	Meter Verification Failure	SMV Fail	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V
Batch Primary Valve	Batch Primary Valve	Batch Primary Valve	Primary Valve	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V
Batch Secondary Valve	Batch Secondary Valve	Batch Secondary Valve	Secondary Valve	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V
Batch Pump	Batch Pump	Batch Pump	Batch Pump	ON	• Internally powered: 24 VDC • Externally powered: Site-specific
				OFF	0 V

(1) *Events configured using the enhanced event model.*
(2) *Events configured using the basic event model.*

Important

- This table assumes that **Discrete Output Polarity** is set to Active High. If **Discrete Output Polarity** is set to Active Low, reverse the voltage values.
- Actual flow direction interacts with **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** to determine the flow direction that the transmitter uses in processing. See the following table.

Table 8-3: Interaction between actual flow direction and Sensor Flow Direction Arrow

Actual flow direction	Setting of Sensor Flow Direction Arrow	Flow direction sent to outputs and totalizers
Forward (same direction as Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Forward
	Against Arrow	Reverse
Reverse (opposite from Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Reverse
	Against Arrow	Forward

8.4.2 Configure Discrete Output Polarity

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel x → I/O Settings → Polarity**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Discrete Output → Polarity**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel x → Discrete Output x → DOx Polarity**

A Discrete Output has two states: ON (active, asserted) and OFF (inactive). Two different voltages are used to represent these states. Discrete Output Polarity controls which voltage represents which state.

Procedure

Set **Discrete Output Polarity** as desired.

Default: Active High

8.4.3 Configure Discrete Output Fault Action

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Fault Action**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Outputs → Discrete Output → Fault Action**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Discrete Output *x* → DO *x* Fault Action**

Discrete Output Fault Action controls the behavior of a Discrete Output if the transmitter detects a fault condition.

Important

- The fault action is implemented only if **Alert Severity** is set to Failure. If **Alert Severity** is set to any other option, the fault action is not implemented.
- For some faults only: If **Fault Timeout** is set to a non-zero value, the transmitter will not implement the fault action until the timeout has elapsed.

NOTICE

Do not use **Discrete Output Source** as a fault indicator. If you do, you may not be able to distinguish a fault condition from a normal operating condition. If you want to use the Discrete Output as a fault indicator, see Fault indication with a Discrete Output.

Procedure

Set **Discrete Output Fault Action** as desired.

Default: None

Options for Discrete Output Fault Action

Label	Discrete Output behavior	
	Polarity=Active High	**Polarity=Active Low**
Upscale	• Fault: Discrete Output is ON (24 VDC or site-specific voltage) • No fault: Discrete Output is controlled by its assignment	• Fault: Discrete Output is OFF (0 V • No fault: Discrete Output is controlled by its assignment
Downscale	• Fault: Discrete Output is OFF (0 V) • No fault: Discrete Output is controlled by its assignment	• Fault: Discrete Output is ON (24 VDC or site-specific voltage) • No fault: Discrete Output is controlled by its assignment
None (default)	Discrete Output is controlled by its assignment	

Fault indication with a Discrete Output

To indicate faults via a Discrete Output, set **Discrete Output Source** to Fault. Then, if a fault occurs, the Discrete Output is always ON and the setting of **Discrete Output Fault Action** is ignored.

8.5 Configure a Discrete Input

Use a Discrete Input to initiate one or more transmitter actions from a remote input device.

8.5.1 Configure Discrete Input Action

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Assign Actions**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Inputs → Action Assignment**
Field Communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Discrete Input *x* → Action Assignment**

Discrete Input Action controls the action or actions that the transmitter will perform when the Discrete Input transitions from OFF to ON.

Important
Before assigning actions to a Discrete Input, check the status of the remote input device. If it is ON, all assigned actions will be performed when the new configuration is implemented. If this is not acceptable, change the status of the remote input device or wait until an appropriate time to assign actions.

Procedure

Set **Discrete Input Action** as desired.

Default: None

Options for Discrete Input Action

Action	Label		
	Display	**ProLink III**	**Field Communicator**
Standard			
Start sensor zero	Start Zero Calibration	Start Sensor Zero	Start Sensor Zero

Action	Label		
	Display	**ProLink III**	**Field Communicator**
Totalizers			
Start/stop all totalizers and inventories	Start/stop all totalizers	Start or Stop All Totalizers	Start/Stop All Totals
Reset totalizer X	Reset Total X	Totalizer X	Reset Total X
Reset all totalizers and inventories	Reset All Totals	Reset All Totals	Reset All Totals
Concentration measurement			
Increment CM matrix	Increment Matrix	Increment ED Curve	Increment Curve
Batching			
Begin batch	Begin Batch	Begin Batch	Start Batch
End batch	End Batch	End Batch	End Batch
Pause batch	Pause Batch	Pause Batch	Pause Batch
Resume batch	Resume Batch	Resume Batch	Resume Batch
Increment batch preset	Increment Preset	Increment Batch Preset	Increment Preset
Inhibit batch totalizer	Inhibit Totalizer	Inhibit Batch Totalizing	Inhibit Batch Totalizing
Inhibit batch	Inhibit Batch	Inhibit Batch Start	Inhibit Batch Start
Inhibit batch flow	Inhibit Flow	Allow Batch End with Flow	Allow Batch End with Flow

8.5.2 Configure Discrete Input Polarity

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → I/O Settings → Polarity**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → I/O → Inputs → Discrete Input → Discrete Input *x* Polarity**
Field Communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel *x* → Discrete Input *x* → DI *x* Polarity**

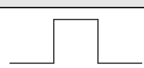
A Discrete Input has two states: ON and OFF. **Discrete Input Polarity** controls how the transmitter maps the input voltage to the ON and OFF states.

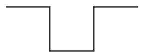
Procedure

Set **Discrete Input Polarity** as desired.

Default: Active Low

Options for Discrete Input Polarity

Polarity	Discrete Input power supply	Voltage	Status of Discrete Input at transmitter
Active High 	Internal	Voltage across terminals is high	ON
		Voltage across terminals is 0 VDC	OFF
	External	Voltage applied across terminals is 3–30 VDC	ON
		Voltage applied across terminals is <0.8 VDC	OFF

Polarity	Discrete Input power supply	Voltage	Status of Discrete Input at transmitter
Active Low 	Internal	Voltage across terminals is 0 VDC	ON
		Voltage across terminals is high	OFF
	External	Voltage applied across terminals is <0.8 VDC	ON
		Voltage applied across terminals is 3–30 VDC	OFF

9 Configure digital communications

9.1 Configure HART® communications

9.1.1 Configure basic HART parameters

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Time/Date/Tag**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Communications → Communications (HART)**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → HART → Communications**

Basic HART parameters include the HART address, HART tags, and the operation of the primary mA output.

Procedure

1. Set **HART Address** to a value that is unique on your network.
   - Default: 0
   - Range: 0 to 63

   Tip
   - The default address is typically used unless you are a multidrop environment.
   - Devices using HART protocol to communicate with the transmitter may use either **HART Address**, **HART Tag**, or **HART Long Tag** to identify the transmitter. Configure any or all, as required by your other HART devices.

2. Set **HART Tag** to a value that is unique on your network.
3. Set **HART Long Tag** to a value that is unique on your network.

   HART Long Tag is supported only by HART 7. If you are using HART 5, you cannot use **HART Long Tag** to communicate with the transmitter.

4. Ensure that **mA Output Action** is configured appropriately.

Option	Description
Enabled (Live)	The primary mA output reports process data as configured. This is the appropriate setting for most applications.
Disabled (Fixed)	The primary mA output is fixed at 4 mA and does not report process data.

   Important
   If you use ProLink III to set **HART Address** to `0`, the program automatically enables **mA Output Action**.
   If you use ProLink III to set **HART Address** to any other value, the program automatically disables **mA Output Action**. This is designed to make it easier to configure the transmitter for legacy behavior. Always verify **mA Output Action** after setting **HART Address**.

9.1.2 Configure HART® variables (PV, SV, TV, QV)

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel A → HART Settings → HART Variables**

ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Communications → Communications (HART) → Variable Assignment**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Variable Mapping**

The HART variables are a set of four variables predefined for HART use. The HART variables include the Primary Variable (PV), Secondary Variable (SV), Tertiary Variable (TV), and Quaternary Variable (QV). You can assign specific process variables to the HART variables, and then use standard HART methods to read or broadcast the assigned process data.

The default HART variables are as follows:

PV Mass Flow

SV Density

TV Volume Flow

QV Temperature

Note
The Tertiary Variable and Quaternary Variable are also called the Third Variable (TV) and Fourth Variable (FV).

Restriction
The Primary Variable is always the process variable assigned to **mA Output 1**. If you change either of these assignments, the other is changed automatically.

The Secondary Variable and Tertiary Variable are not tied to any outputs. This is different from previous Micro Motion Coriolis transmitters.

Procedure

Assign variables to the PV, SV, TV, and QV as desired.

Options for HART variables

Process variable	PV	SV	TV	QV
Standard				
Mass flow rate	✓	✓	✓	✓
Volume flow rate	✓	✓	✓	✓
Gas standard volume flow rate	✓	✓	✓	✓
Temperature	✓	✓	✓	✓
Density	✓	✓	✓	✓
External pressure	✓	✓	✓	✓
External temperature	✓	✓	✓	✓
Totalizers and inventories				
Current value of any totalizer		✓	✓	✓
Current value of any inventory		✓	✓	✓
Diagnostics				
Velocity	✓	✓	✓	✓
Drive gain	✓	✓	✓	✓
Tube frequency		✓	✓	✓

Process variable	PV	SV	TV	QV
Meter temperature		✓	✓	✓
Board temperature		✓	✓	✓
Inlet (LPO) amplitude		✓	✓	✓
Outlet (RPO) amplitude		✓	✓	✓
Live zero		✓	✓	✓
PV loop current		✓	✓	✓
% of range		✓	✓	✓
Two-phase flow severity	✓	✓	✓	✓
API referral				
Temperature-corrected density	✓	✓	✓	✓
Temperature-corrected (standard) volume flow rate	✓	✓	✓	✓
Average temperature-corrected density	✓	✓	✓	✓
Average temperature	✓	✓	✓	✓
CTPL		✓	✓	✓
Concentration measurement				
Density at reference	✓	✓	✓	✓
Specific gravity	✓	✓	✓	✓
Standard volume flow rate	✓	✓	✓	✓
Net mass flow rate	✓	✓	✓	✓
Net volume flow rate	✓	✓	✓	✓
Concentration	✓	✓	✓	✓

9.1.3 Configure burst communications

Burst mode is a mode of communication during which the transmitter regularly broadcasts HART® digital information to the network via the primary mA output.

Configure HART burst messages

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel A → HART Settings → Burst Message x**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Communications → Communications (HART) → Burst Mode**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → HART → Burst Mode**

Burst messages contain information on process variables or transmitter status. You can configure up to three burst messages. Each message can contain different information. Burst messages also provide the mechanism for trigger mode and event notification.

Procedure

1. Navigate to the burst message you want to configure.
2. Enable the burst message.
3. Set **Burst Option** to the desired content.

Table 9-1: Options for burst message contents

HART command	Label		Description
	PLII	FC	
1	Source (Primary Variable)	Primary Variable	The transmitter sends the primary variable (PV) in the configured measurement units in each burst message (e.g., 14.0 g/sec, 13.5 g/sec, 12.0 g/sec).
2	Primary Variable (Percent Range/Current)	Pct Range/Current	The transmitter sends the PV's actual mA level and the PV's percent of range in each burst message (e.g., 11.0 mA 25%).
3	Process Variables/Current	Process Vars/Current	The transmitter sends the PV's actual milliamp reading and the PV, SV, TV, and QV values in measurement units in each burst message (e.g., 11.8 mA, 50 g/sec, 23 °C, 50 g/sec, 0.0023 g/cm^3).
9	Read Device Variables with Status	Device Variables with Status	The transmitter sends up to eight user-specified process variables in each burst message.
33	Transmitter Variables	Field Device Vars	The transmitter sends four user-specified process variables in each burst message.
48	Read Additional Transmitter Status	Read Additional Device Status	The transmitter sends expanded device status information in each burst message.

4. Depending on your choice, select the four or eight user-specified variables for the burst message, or set the HART variables as desired.

Configure HART trigger mode

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel A → HART Settings → Burst Message *x* → Trigger Mode**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Communications → Communications (HART) → Trigger Mode**
Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → HART → Burst Mode → Burst Message *x* → Configure Update Rate**

Trigger mode uses the burst message mechanism to indicate that a process variable has changed. When trigger mode is implemented, the bursting interval (HART update rate) changes if Primary Variable or Burst Variable 0 moves above or below the user-specified trigger level. You can set up a different trigger on each burst message.

Prerequisites

Before you can configure trigger mode, the corresponding HART burst message must be enabled.

Procedure

1. Select the burst message for which you will set up trigger mode.
2. Set **Trigger Mode** to the type of trigger you want to use.

Option	Description
Continuous	The burst message is sent at **Default Update Rate**. The burst interval is not affected by changes in process variables.
Falling	• When the specified process variable is above **Trigger Level**, the burst message is sent at **Default Update Rate**.

Option	Description
	• When the specified process variable is below **Trigger Level**, the burst message is sent at **Update Rate**.
Rising	• When the specified process variable is below **Trigger Level**, the burst message is sent at **Default Update Rate**. • When the specified process variable is above **Trigger Level**, the burst message is sent at **Update Rate**.
Windowed	This option is used to communicate that the process variable is changing rapidly. **Trigger Level** defines a deadband around the most recently broadcast value. • If the process variable stays within this deadband, the burst message is sent at **Default Update Rate**. • If the process variable moves outside this deadband in either direction, the burst message is sent at **Update Rate**.
On Change	• If any value in the burst message changes, the burst message is sent at **Update Rate**. • If no values change, the burst message is sent at **Default Update Rate**.

3. Set **Trigger Level** to the value of the process variable at which the trigger will be activated.
4. Set **Default Update Rate** (or **Base Burst Rate**) to the burst interval to be used when the trigger is not active.
5. Set **Update Rate** (or **Triggered Burst Rate**) to the burst interval to be used when the trigger is active.

9.2 Configure Modbus communications

Display	**Menu → Configuration → Inputs/Outputs → Channel C**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Communications → Communications (Modbus)**
Field Communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Inputs/Outputs → Channel C → Set Up RS-485 Port**

Modbus communications parameters control Modbus communications with the transmitter.

Restriction
If you need to configure all Modbus parameters, you must use ProLink III. The display does not provide access to **Modbus ASCII Support** or **Additional Communications Response Delay**. The Field Communicator provides access only to **Modbus Address**.

Modbus support is implemented on the RS-485 physical layer via Channel C.

Important
Your device automatically accepts all connection requests within the following ranges:

- Protocol: Modbus RTU (8-bit) or Modbus ASCII (7-bit) unless **Modbus ASCII Support** is disabled
- Parity: none, odd, or even
- Stop bits: 1 or 2
- Baud: 1200, 2400, 4800, 9600, 19200, 38400

You do not need to configure these communications parameters on the device.

Procedure

1. Enable or disable **Modbus ASCII Support** as desired.
   The setting of this parameter controls the range of valid Modbus addresses for your device.

Modbus ASCII support	Available Modbus addresses
Disabled	1–127
Enabled	1–15, 32–47, 64–79, and 96–110

2. Set **Modbus Address** to a unique value on the network.
3. Set **Floating-Point Byte Order** to match the byte order used by your Modbus host.

Code	Byte order
0	1–2 3–4
1	3–4 1–2
2	2–1 4–3
3	4–3 2–1

   See the following table for the bit structure of bytes 1, 2, 3, and 4.

   Table 9-2: Bit structure of floating-point bytes

Byte	Bits	Definition
1	SEEEEEEE	S=Sign E=Exponent
2	EMMMMMMM	E=Exponent M=Mantissa
3–4	MMMMMMMM	M=Mantissa

4. Set **Double-Precision Byte Order** to match the byte order used by your Modbus host.

Code	Byte order
0	1–2–3–4 5–6–7–8
1	3–4–1–2 7–8–5–6
2	2–1–4–3 6–5–8–7
3	4–3–2–1 8–7–6–5
4	5–6–7–8 1–2–3–4
5	7–8–5–6 3–4–1–2
6	6–5–8–7 2–1–4–3
7	8–7–6–5 4–3–2–1

   See the following table for the bit structure of bytes 1–8.

Table 9-3: Bit structure of double-precision bytes

Byte	Bits	Definition
1	SEEEEEEE	S=Sign E=Exponent
2	EEEEMMMM	E=Exponent M=Mantissa
3–8	MMMMMMMM	M=Mantissa

5. Optional: Set **Additional Communications Response Delay** in *delay units*.

   A delay unit is ⅔ of the time required to transmit one character, as calculated for the port currently in use and the character transmission parameters.

   Additional Communications Response Delay is used to synchronize Modbus communications with hosts that operate at a slower speed than the device. The value specified here will be added to each response the device sends to the host.

   - Default: 0
   - Range: 0 to 255

   Tip
   Do not set **Additional Communications Response Delay** unless required by your Modbus host.

9.3 Wireless configuration via Bluetooth® technology

9.3.1 Download AMS Device Configurator

Procedure

Download and install the app from your app store.

9.3.2 Configure via Bluetooth® wireless technology

Procedure

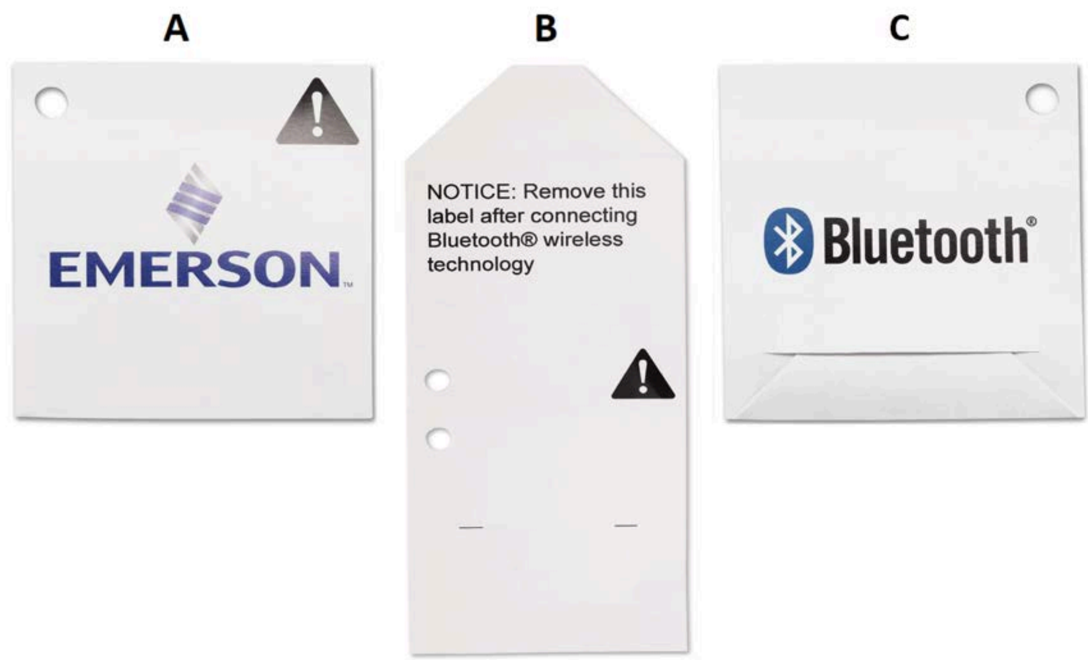
1. Launch AMS Device Configurator.
2. Click on the device you want to connect to.
3. On first connection, enter the key for this device.
4. At the top left, click the menu icon to navigate the desired device menu.

Bluetooth® UID and key

You can find the UID and key in 3 locations:

1. On the paper tag attached to the device (Figure 9-1)
2. On the label inside the terminal cover (Figure 9-2)
3. On the label on the outer edge within the display screen (Figure 9-3)

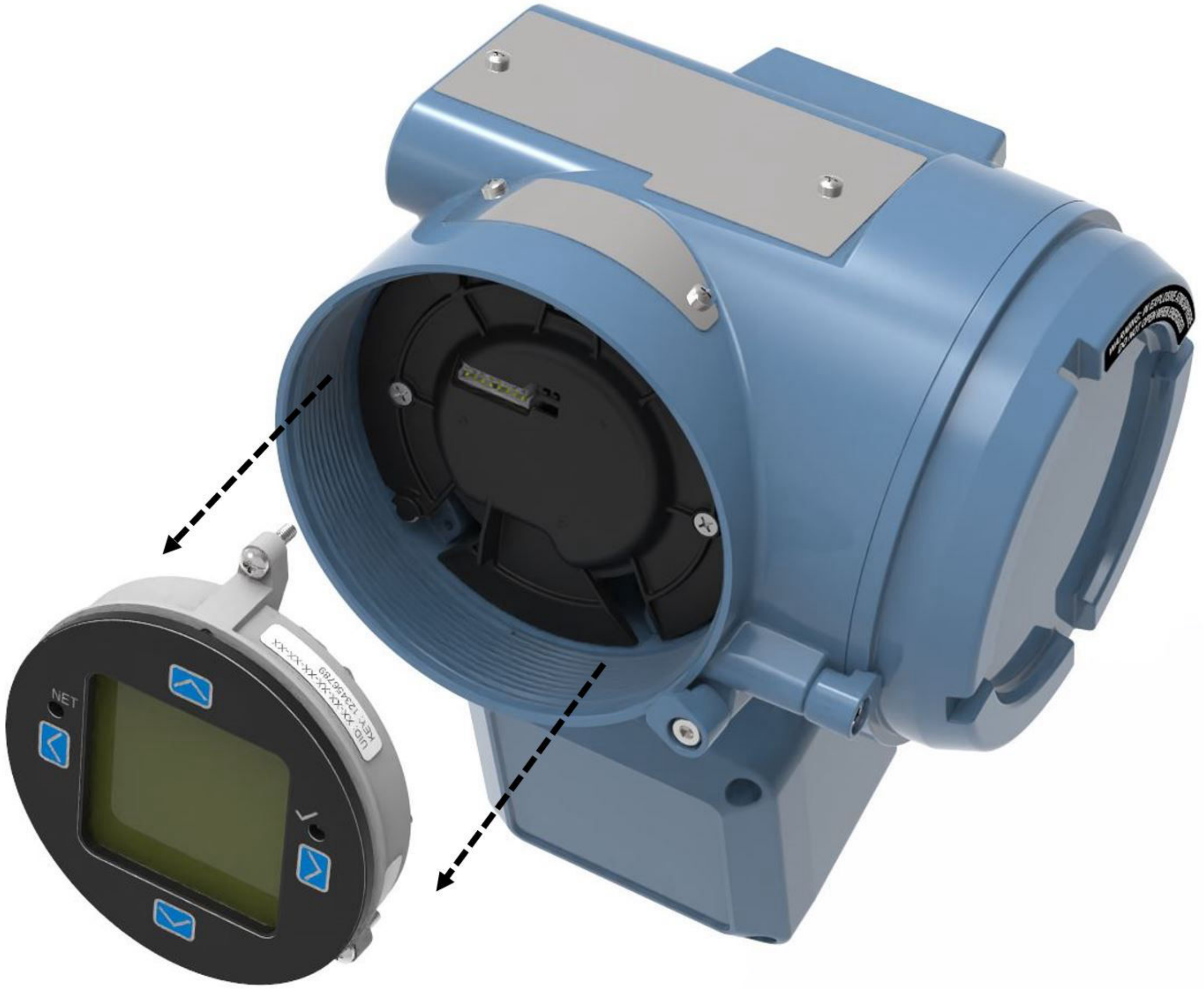
Figure 9-1: Bluetooth Security Information



A. *Front Outside*
B. *Back Inside with Sticker*
C. *Back Outside*

Figure 9-2: Label Inside the Terminal Cover

Figure 9-3: Label Pasted on the Outer Edge of the Removed Display (Top Right)



10 Complete the configuration

10.1 Test or tune the system using sensor simulation

Display	**Menu → Startup Tasks → Commissioning Tools → Sensor Simulation**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Diagnostics → Testing → Sensor Simulation**
Field communicator	**Service Tools → Simulate → Simulate Sensor**

Use sensor simulation to test the system's response to a variety of process conditions, including boundary conditions, problem conditions, or alert conditions, or to tune the loop.

Restriction
Sensor simulation is available only on flow meters with the enhanced core processor.

Prerequisites

Before enabling sensor simulation, ensure that your process can tolerate the effects of the simulated process values.

Procedure

1. Enable sensor simulation.
2. For mass flow, set **Wave Form** as desired and enter the required values.

Option	Required values
Fixed	Fixed Value
Sawtooth	Period Minimum Maximum
Sine	Period Minimum Maximum

3. For density, set **Wave Form** as desired and enter the required values.

Option	Required values
Fixed	Fixed Value
Sawtooth	Period Minimum Maximum
Sine	Period Minimum Maximum

4. For temperature, set **Wave Form** as desired and enter the required values.

Option	Required values
Fixed	Fixed Value
Sawtooth	Period Minimum Maximum
Sine	Period Minimum Maximum

5. Observe the system response to the simulated values and make any appropriate changes to the transmitter configuration or to the system.
6. Modify the simulated values and repeat.
7. When you have finished testing or tuning, disable sensor simulation.

10.1.1 Sensor simulation

Sensor simulation allows you to test the system or tune the loop without having to create the test conditions in your process. When sensor simulation is enabled, the transmitter reports the simulated values for mass flow, density, and temperature, and takes all appropriate actions. For example, the transmitter might apply a cutoff, activate an event, or post an alert.

When sensor simulation is enabled, the simulated values are stored in the same memory locations used for process data from the sensor. The simulated values are then used throughout transmitter functioning. For example, sensor simulation will affect:

- All mass flow rate, temperature, and density values displayed or reported via outputs or digital communications
- The mass total and mass inventory values
- All volume calculations and data, including reported values, volume totals, and volume inventories
- All mass, temperature, density, or volume values logged to Data Logger

Sensor simulation does not affect any diagnostic values.

Unlike actual mass flow rate and density values, the simulated values are not temperature-compensated (adjusted for the effect of temperature on the sensor’s flow tubes).

10.2 Enable or disable software write protection

When enabled, write protection prevents changes to the transmitter configuration. You can perform all other functions, and you can view the transmitter configuration parameters.

Write protection is enabled by toggling the physical write protect (dip) switch (identified by a lock icon) located behind the display module.

Figure 10-1: Write protect (dip) switch behind the display module

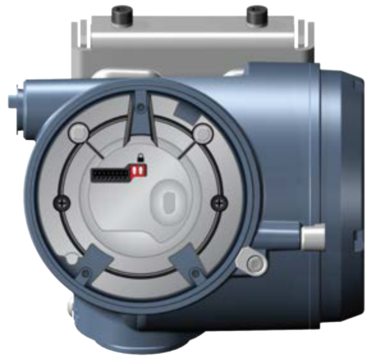


Figure 10-2: Write protect on the display (upper right corner)

You cannot change write protection from any host configuration tool.

Note
Write protecting the transmitter primarily prevents accidental changes to configuration, not intentional changes. Any user who can change the switch can disable write protection.

11 Transmitter operation

11.1 View process and diagnostic variables

Process variables provide information about the state of the process fluid. Diagnostic variables provide data about device operation. You can use this data to monitor and troubleshoot your process.

11.1.1 View process and diagnostic variables using the display

The display reports the name of the variable (for example, *Density*), the current value of the variable, and the associated unit of measure (for example, kg/m^3).

Prerequisites

For a process or diagnostic variable to be viewed using the display, it must be configured as a display variable.

Procedure

- If **Auto Scroll** is not enabled, activate ⇩ or ⇧ to move through the list of display variables.
- If **Auto Scroll** is enabled, wait until the variable is displayed automatically. If you do not want to wait, you can activate ⇩ or ⇧ to force the display to scroll.

11.1.2 View process variables and other data using ProLink III

Monitor process variables, diagnostic variables, and other data to maintain process quality.

ProLink III automatically displays process variables, diagnostic variables, and other data on the main screen.

Tip
ProLink III allows you to choose the process variables that appear on the main screen. You can also choose whether to view data in Analog Gauge view or digital view, and you can customize the gauge settings. For more information, see the *Micro Motion ProLink III with ProcessViz Software User Manual*.

11.1.3 View process variables and other data using a field communicator

Monitor process variables, diagnostic variables, and other data to maintain process quality.

Procedure

- To view current values of basic process variables, choose **Overview**.
- To view a more complete set of process variables, plus the current state of the outputs, choose **Service Tools → Variables**.
- To view diagnostic variables, choose **Service Tools → Maintenance → Diagnostic Variables**.

11.1.4 Effect of Sensor Flow Direction Arrow on digital communications

Flow rates on the transmitter display or reported via digital communications are shown as positive or negative. The sign depends on the interaction between **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** and the actual flow direction.

This interaction affects flow rates shown on the transmitter display, ProLink III, and all other user interfaces.

Actual flow direction	Setting of Sensor Flow Direction Arrow	Flow rate value	
		Transmitter display	Digital communications
Forward (same direction as Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Positive (no sign)	Positive
	Against Arrow	Negative	Negative
Reverse (opposite from Flow arrow on sensor)	With Arrow	Negative	Negative
	Against Arrow	Positive (no sign)	Positive

11.2 View and acknowledge status alerts

The transmitter posts a status alert whenever one of the specified conditions occurs. You can view active alerts and you can acknowledge alerts. You do not have to acknowledge alerts: The transmitter will perform normal measurement and reporting functions with unacknowledged alerts.

11.2.1 View and acknowledge alerts using the display

You can view information about all active or unacknowledged alerts, and you can acknowledge alerts.

The display uses the alert banner and the alert symbol ⓘ to provide information about alerts.

Table 11-1: Alert information on display

Display status	Cause	User action
Alert banner	One or more alerts are active.	Resolve the conditions to clear the alert. When the alert is cleared or acknowledged, the banner will be removed.
Alert symbol ⓘ	One or more alerts are unacknowledged.	Acknowledge the alert. When all alerts are acknowledged, the alert icon will be removed.

If alert security is enabled, the alert banner is never displayed. To view detailed information, you must use the alert menu: **Menu** → **(i) Alert List**.

Note
Certain alerts do not clear until the transmitter is rebooted.

Procedure

- If the alert banner appears:
  a) Activate **Info** to view information about the alert.
  b) Take appropriate steps to clear the alert.
  c) Activate **Ack** to acknowledge the alert.
- If ⓘ appears:
  a) Choose **Menu** → **(i) Alert List**.
  b) Select an alert to view more information about the specific alert or to acknowledge it individually.
  c) Choose **Acknowledge All Alerts** to acknowledge all alerts on the list.

11.2.2 View and acknowledge alerts using ProLink III

You can view a list containing all alerts that are active, or inactive but unacknowledged. From this list, you can acknowledge individual alerts or choose to acknowledge all alerts at once.

Note
Certain alerts do not clear until the transmitter is rebooted.

Procedure

1. View alerts on the ProLink III main screen under **Alerts**.

   All active or unacknowledged alerts are listed. Take appropriate steps to clear all active alerts.

2. To acknowledge a single alert, check the **Ack** check box for that alert. To acknowledge all alerts at once, select **Ack All**.

11.2.3 View alerts using a field communicator

You can view a list containing all alerts that are active, or inactive but unacknowledged.

Restriction
You cannot use a field communicator to acknowledge alerts. You can only view alerts. To acknowledge alerts, use the display or make a connection to the transmitter using a different tool.

Procedure

- To view active or unacknowledged alerts, choose **Service Tools** → **Alerts**.

  All active alerts and unacknowledged alerts are listed. Select an alert to view detailed information.

- To refresh the list, choose **Service Tools** → **Alerts** → **Refresh Alerts**.

11.3 Read totalizer and inventory values

Display	**Menu** → **Operations** → **Totalizers** → **See Totals**
ProLink III	**Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Totalizers** **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Inventories**
Field communicator	**Overview** → **Totalizer Control**

Totalizers keep track of the total amount of mass or volume measured by the transmitter since the last totalizer reset. Inventories keep track of the total amount of mass or volume measured by the transmitter since the last inventory reset.

11.4 Start, stop, and reset totalizers and inventories

When a totalizer or inventory is started, its value increases or decreases depending on the interaction of the flow direction parameters. It continues tracking flow until it is stopped.

When a totalizer or inventory is reset, its value is set to 0. You can reset a totalizer or inventory while it is started or while it is stopped.

- You can start, stop, or reset each totalizer or inventory independently.
- You can start, stop, or reset all totalizers and inventories as a group.

11.4.1 Start, stop, and reset totalizers using the display

You can start and stop each totalizer or inventory independently. You can start and stop all totalizers and inventories as a group. You can reset each totalizer or inventory independently. You can reset all totalizers as a group.

When a totalizer or inventory is started, its value increases or decreases depending on the interaction of the flow direction parameters. It continues tracking flow until it is stopped.

When a totalizer or inventory is reset, its value is set to 0. You can reset a totalizer or inventory while it is started or while it is stopped.

Prerequisites

To stop, start, or reset a single totalizer or inventory, the totalizer or inventory must be configured as a display variable.

Procedure

- To start or stop a single totalizer or inventory:
  a) Wait or scroll until the totalizer or inventory appears on the display.
  b) Choose **Options**.
  c) Choose **Start** or **Stop**.
- To start or stop all totalizers and inventories as a group:
  a) Choose **Menu** → **Operations** → **Totalizers**.
  b) Choose **Start** or **Stop**.
- To reset a single totalizer or inventory:
  a) Wait or scroll until the totalizer or inventory appears on the display.
  b) Choose **Options**.
  c) Choose **Reset**.
- To reset all totalizers as a group:
  a) Choose **Menu** → **Operations** → **Totalizers**.
  b) Choose **Reset All**.

11.4.2 Start, stop, and reset totalizers using ProLink III

Prerequisites

To reset an inventory using ProLink III, this function must be enabled. To enable inventory reset using ProLink III, choose **Tools** → **Options** and enable **Reset Inventories from ProLink III**. Note that this affects only ProLink III. Resetting inventories using other tools is not affected.

Procedure

- To start or stop a single totalizer:
  a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Totalizers**.
  b) Scroll to the totalizer that you want to start or stop, and click **Start** or **Stop**.
- To start or stop a single inventory:
  a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Inventories**.
  b) Scroll to the inventory that you want to start or stop, and click **Start** or **Stop**.

- To start or stop all totalizers as a group:
    a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Totalizers** or **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Inventories**.
    b) Select **Start All Totals** or **Stop All Totals**.
- To reset a single totalizer:
    a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Totalizers**.
    b) Scroll to the totalizer that you want to reset, and click **Reset**.
- To reset a single inventory:
    a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Inventories**.
    b) Scroll to the inventory that you want to reset, and click **Reset**.
- To reset all totalizers as a group:
    a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Totalizers**.
    b) Select **Reset All Totals**.
- To reset all inventories as a group:
    a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Totalizer Control** → **Inventories**.
    b) Select **Reset All Inventories**.

12 Measurement support

12.1 Use Smart Meter Verification

Smart Meter Verification™ provides in-process flow meter health verification by analyzing the meter components related to measurement performance. You can run Smart Meter Verification without stopping the process. Use this section to run a Smart Meter Verification test, view and interpret the results, set up automatic execution, and check if a field reference point has been established.

12.1.1 Smart Meter Verification capabilities

Capability	Basic	Professional
	Included	90-day trial, licensed
Calibration coefficients audit	•	•
Zero audit	•	•
Electronics verification	•	•
Automatic test scheduler	•	•
History of previous 20 results	•	•
Verification report		•(1)
Non-uniform coating diagnostic		•
Multiphase diagnostic		•(2)
Flow range diagnostic		•(2)

(1) *Create and export with ProLink III, web page, or AMS SNAP-ON.*
(2) *24-hour historian visualization in ProLink III Professional.*

12.1.2 Run a Smart Meter Verification test

Run a Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test to diagnose the flow meter (and flow meter system) and verify if the flow meter is functioning properly and performing within factory specifications.

Run a Smart Meter Verification test using the display

Prerequisites

Read the Smart Meter Verification prerequisites in Use Smart Meter Verification.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Operations** → **Smart Meter Verification** → **Run Verification**.
2. Select the desired output behavior.

Option	Description
Continue Measuring	During the test, all outputs will continue to report their assigned process variables. The test will run for approximately 90 seconds.
Fix at Last Measured Value	During the test, all outputs will report the last measured value of their assigned process variable. The test will run for approximately 140 seconds.

Option	Description
Fix at Fault	During the test, all outputs will go to their configured fault action. The test will run for approximately 140 seconds.

The test starts immediately.

3. Wait for the test to complete.

Note
At any time during the process, you can abort the test. If the outputs were fixed, they will return to normal behavior.

Run a Smart Meter Verification test using ProLink III Basic or Professional

Procedure

1. Read the Smart Meter Verification prerequisites in Use Smart Meter Verification if you have not done so already.
2. Run Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional using ProLink III Basic or Professional:
   - Smart Meter Verification Basic: **Device Tools** → **Diagnostics** → **Meter Verification** → **Basic Meter Verification**
   - Smart Meter Verification Professional: **Smart Meter Verification Overview** → **Meter Verification** → **Run Verification**
   - Smart Meter Verification Professional: **Device Tools** → **Diagnostics** → **Meter Verification** → **Run Test**
3. In the ***SMV Test Definition*** window, enter any desired information and click **Next**.

   None of this information is required. It does not affect Smart Meter Verification processing.

   ProLink III stores this information in the Smart Meter Verification database on the PC. It is not saved to the transmitter.
4. Select the desired output behavior.

Option	Description
Continue Measuring	During the test, all outputs will continue to report their assigned process variables. The test will run for approximately 90 seconds.
Fix at Last Measured Value	During the test, all outputs will report the last measured value of their assigned process variable. The test will run for approximately 140 seconds.
Fix at Fault	During the test, all outputs will go to their configured fault action. The test will run for approximately 140 seconds.

5. Select **Start** and wait for the test to complete.

Note
At any time during the process, you can abort the test. If the outputs were fixed, they will return to normal behavior.

Run a Smart Meter Verification test using a field communicator

Field communicator	**Service Tools** → **Maintenance** → **Routine Maintenance** → **SMV** → **Manual Verification** → **Start**

Procedure

1. Read the Smart Meter Verification prerequisites in Use Smart Meter Verification if you have not done so already.
2. Select the desired output behavior.

Option	Description
Continue Measuring	During the test, all outputs will continue to report their assigned process variables. The test will run for approximately 90 seconds.
Fix at Last Measured Value	During the test, all outputs will report the last measured value of their assigned process variable. The test will run for approximately 140 seconds.
Fix at Fault	During the test, all outputs will go to their configured fault action. The test will run for approximately 140 seconds.

The test starts immediately.
3. Wait for the test to complete.

Note
At any time during the process, you can abort the test. If the outputs were fixed, they will return to normal behavior.

Run a Smart Meter Verification test from a Modbus host

Prerequisites

The Modbus host must be connected to the transmitter.

Procedure

1. Read the Smart Meter Verification prerequisites in Use Smart Meter Verification if you have not done so already.
2. If you are fixing outputs during the test, set the output state from Register 3093.

Option	Description
0	Last Measured Value
1	Fault Action

3. From Register 3000, start or abort the test.
4. Read Register 3001. Is the test running?

Option	Description
> 0 = Yes	Read the percent complete from Register 3020. Range: 0 to 100
0 = No	Continue to the next step.

5. Read Register 3000. Did the test run to completion?

Option	Description
0 = Yes	Continue to the next step.

Option	Description
> 0 = No	Read the abort code on Register 3002. 2 = SMV timeout — check status of pickoff and drive coils 3 = Pickoff voltage low — check status of pickoff and drive coils 4 = Temperature unstable — verify that the temperature is stable and start again 7 = Drive loop AGC reported an amplitude error — check status of pickoff and drive coils 8 = High flow (dt) standard deviation — reduce flow rate and start again 9 = High flow (dt) mean value — reduce flow rate and start again 12 = Transmitter in fault — clear alarms before proceeding 13 = No factory air verification — perform factory calibration on air 14 = No factory water verification — perform factory calibration on water 15 = Drive frequency drift from carrier frequency — ensure temperature, flow, and density are stable and start again

6. Read Register 3004. Has the test passed?

0 = Yes	The test passed.
> 0 = No	The test result is caution. Continue to the next step.

7. Read Register 6348.

256	Possible extreme temperature or corrosion
512	Possible extreme temperature or damage
2048	Possible corrosion/erosion

12.1.3 View Smart Meter Verification test results

When the Smart Meter Verification Basic test is complete, a pass/fail result is displayed. With Smart Meter Verification Professional, detailed results and reports are available.

Note
With Smart Meter Verification Professional, the twenty most recent results are available. If viewed using ProLink III Basic or Professional, results for all tests that are in the PC database are available.

View Smart Meter Verification test results using the display

Results of the current Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test display automatically after the test is complete.

With Smart Meter Verification Professional, use the following procedure to view previous test results.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Operations** → **Smart Meter Verification** → **Read Verification History**.
2. To view detailed data for an individual test, select it from the list.

View Smart Meter Verification test results using ProLink III Basic or Professional

Results of the current Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test display automatically after the test is complete.

With Smart Meter Verification Professional, use the following procedure to view previous test results.

To generate a previous test report, the Smart Meter Verification Professional test must have been run on the current PC in use.

Procedure

1. Choose one of the following options:
   - **Device Tools → Diagnostics → Meter Verification → View Previous Test Results**
   - **Smart Meter Verification Overview → Meter Verification → History**
2. To view details, choose the results of interest: **Show Report** (or **Next** to show the report).
   ProLink III displays a report containing details of the most recent tests. The report is automatically saved to the Smart Meter Verification database. You can print or export the report.

View Smart Meter Verification test results using a field communicator

In addition to test results, some field communicator brands provide a trend chart.

Results of the current Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test display automatically after the test is complete.

With Smart Meter Verification Professional, use the following procedure to view previous test results.

Procedure

1. Choose **Service Tools → Maintenance → Routine Maintenance → SMV → Manual Verification**.
2. Choose **Upload Results Data from Device**.

   The field communicator stores only the most recent test result. To view earlier results, you must upload them from the device. They will be available only for the current session.
3. Choose **Show Results Table**.
   The field communicator displays detailed results for the first test.
4. Press **OK** to move through all test records in the local database.

View Smart Meter Verification test results from a Modbus host

Prerequisites

To read test results, the Modbus host must be connected to the transmitter.

Procedure

1. Specify the test record you want to read by writing a value between 0 and 19 to the appropriate register.

Register	Description
5779	Register 5825 = the most recent test

2. Read the Modbus register values using the descriptions in the following table.

Registers	Description
5697	Test number
5820 and 5821	Test result 0 = Pass 1 = Caution
5819	State
5818	Abort code (compressed)

Registers	Description
5780	Time initiated
5782 and 5783	Inlet normalized data
5784 and 5785	Outlet normalized data

3. Disconnect as desired.

Interpreting Smart Meter Verification results

When the Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test is completed, the result is reported as Pass, Fail, or Abort. (Some tools report the Fail result as `Advisory` instead.)

Pass The meter is performing within factory specifications.

Abort When you execute a Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test, the test performs a self-diagnostic check to ensure that the flow meter is stable prior to running the test. In the rare case that this check reveals an issue, Smart Meter Verification will report an abort code.

If you manually cancel an in-process Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test, the test result displays `Abort Code 1: User-Initiated Abort`. In this case, you can restart Smart Meter Verification without any further action. In the rare case any other abort occurs, contact factory support.

In all cases where a Smart Meter Verification Professional test aborts, no report will be generated.

Fail

12.1.4 Resolve a failed Smart Meter Verification test

Procedure

1. Verify the sensor by performing a visual inspection, density verification, or field proving.
2. If possible, run Smart Meter Verification Professional with ProLink III Basic or Professional and save the results as follows:
   - In a `.csv` file
   - In a report
   - If the transmitter has a historian, retrieve the Smart Meter Verification results from the service or historian files.
3. Contact the factory for further evaluation and instructions.

12.1.5 Set up Smart Meter Verification automatic execution

You can execute a Smart Meter Verification Basic or Professional test on demand or automatically schedule future runs. You can schedule future runs via two different options: as a single test at a user-defined future time, or automatically on a regular schedule.

Tip
The time between test runs must be between 1 and 1000 hours. The time for the first test run can be any positive floating number.

Set up Smart Meter Verification automatic execution using the display

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Operations** → **Smart Meter Verification** → **Schedule Verification**.
2. To schedule a single test:
   a) Set **Hours to 1st Run** to the number of hours to elapse before the test is run.
   b) Set **Hours Between** to `0`.
3. To schedule a recurring execution:
   a) Set **Hours Between** to the number of hours between recurring runs.
4. To disable scheduled execution:
   a) Set **Hours to 1st Run** to `0`.
   b) Set **Hours Between** to `0`.

Set up Smart Meter Verification automatic execution using ProLink III Basic or Professional

Procedure

1. Select one of the following paths to access the Smart Meter Verification scheduler.
   - ProLink III Basic or Professional: Choose **Device Tools** → **Diagnostics** → **Meter Verification** → **Schedule Meter Verification**.
   - ProLink III Professional: Choose **Smart Meter Verification Overview** → **Tools** → **Schedule Smart Meter Verification**.
2. To schedule a single test:
   a) Set **Specify Time Until Next Run** to the number of days, hours, and minutes to elapse before the test is run.
   b) Set **Specify Time Between Recurring Runs** to `0` **days**, `0` **hours**, and `0` **minutes**.
3. To schedule a recurring execution:
   a) Set **Specify Time Until Next Run** to the number of days, hours, and minutes to elapse before the first test is run.
   b) Set **Specify Time Between Recurring Runs** to the number of days, hours, and minutes to elapse between runs.
4. To disable scheduled execution, choose **Disable Scheduled Execution**.

Field communicator	**Service Tools** → **Maintenance** → **Routine Maintenance** → **SMV** → **Automatic Verification**

Procedure

1. To schedule a single test:
   a) Set **Hrs Until Next Run** to the number of hours to elapse before the test is run.
   b) Set **Recurring Hours** to `0`.
2. To schedule a recurring execution:
   a) Set **Hrs Until Next Run** to the number of hours to elapse before the first test is run.

b) Set **Recurring Hours** to the number of hours to elapse between runs.

3. To disable scheduled execution, select **Turn Off Schedule**.

Set up Smart Meter Verification automatic execution from a Modbus host

Use the Modbus host to set up the schedule.

Prerequisites

To configure a test execution and view a scheduled test execution, the Modbus host must be connected to the transmitter. Once the schedule is loaded into the transmitter, the Modbus host no longer has to be connected to the transmitter.

Procedure

1. Choose any of the following options:

Option	Description
Specify the hours until test execution for a single execution	Write a floating-point value to Register 2993.
Specify the hours for a recurring execution	• To specify the number of hours until the first test is executed, write a floating-point value to Register 2993. • To specify the number of hours between test executions, write a floating-point value to Register 2995.
View the number of hours until the next execution	Read Register 2997.
Cancel a scheduled execution	• Write `0` to Register 2993. • Write `0` to Register 2995.

2. Disconnect as desired.

Check for a field reference point

Use this procedure to check if a field reference point was created.

Prerequisites

- Smart Meter Verification Professional
- ProLink III Basic or Professional

Procedure

1. From ProLink III Basic or Professional, choose one of the following options:
   - **Device Tools → Diagnostics → Meter Verification → View Previous Test Results**
   - **Smart Meter Verification Overview → Meter Verification → History**
2. Select **Export Data to CSV File**.
3. Save the CSV file to your computer.
4. Locate and open the CSV file.

5. Locate and examine the two columns labeled, **Inlet Stiffness** and **Outlet Stiffness**.
   - If the field reference point has not been established, the numbers in both columns will be exactly 1.
   - If the field reference point has been established, the numbers located in both columns will be close to 1. The **Inlet Stiffness** and **Outlet Stiffness** numbers do not have to match.

12.2 Advanced Phase Measurement software

Micro Motion Advanced Phase Measurement software improves long-term flow reporting and measurement performance in processes with intermittent periods of two-phase flow, including liquids with entrained gas or gas with entrained liquid. If Advanced Phase Measurement is combined with the Net Oil or concentration measurement software options, the software can also report liquid concentration, Net Oil, and/or Gas Void Fraction (GVF) during the same two-phase conditions.

The following measurement options are available with Advanced Phase Measurement software:

- Net Oil
- Liquid with Gas
- Gas with Liquid

Note
Each option is licensed separately in the transmitter. Field upgrades are permitted.

Table 12-1: Net oil options (choose one)

License option (ordering code)	Description	Availability
MA — Manual Advanced Phase Measurement configuration	Suitable for a mixture of oil and water under predictable flow conditions. Includes manual drive gain threshold only. This option is the 4700 upgrade for Production Volume Reconciliation (PVR).	Do not combine with APM liquid with gas (option PL) — basic remediation for gas is included.
PO — Net Oil	Suitable for mixtures of oil and water. Add PL option to remediate for gas.	Can be combined with APM license code PL. PL is recommended since most net oil applications contain gas.

Table 12-2: Liquid with gas

License option (ordering code)	Description	Availability
PL — Advanced Phase Measurement Liquid with Gas	Suitable for any liquid with entrained gas.	Can be combined with APM license code PO. Can be combined with license code concentration measurement (CM).

Table 12-3: Gas with liquid

License option (ordering code)	Description	Availability
PG — Advanced Phase Measurement Gas with Liquid	Suitable for any gas that may contain entrained liquids (mist).	Cannot be activated with any other license code.

12.3 Piecewise linearization (PWL) for calibrating gas meters

Piecewise linearization (PWL) can linearize the measurements of flow meters for greater accuracy in order to measure gas over a wide range of flow rates.

PWL does not apply when measuring liquid flow. When better accuracy is required over the published gas measurement specifications, an Emerson-approved independent gas laboratory can calibrate gas up to 10 PWL adjustment points.

Restriction
You cannot use a field communicator to configure PWL.

For more information, contact flow support at flowsupport@emerson.com.

The PWL feature is available in ProLink III, so you can view the points that are stored and capture them in the uploaded and downloaded configuration files.

12.3.1 Configure piecewise linearization (PWL)

Display	Not available
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Process Measurement → Piecewise Linearization for Gas (PWL)**
Field communicator	Not available

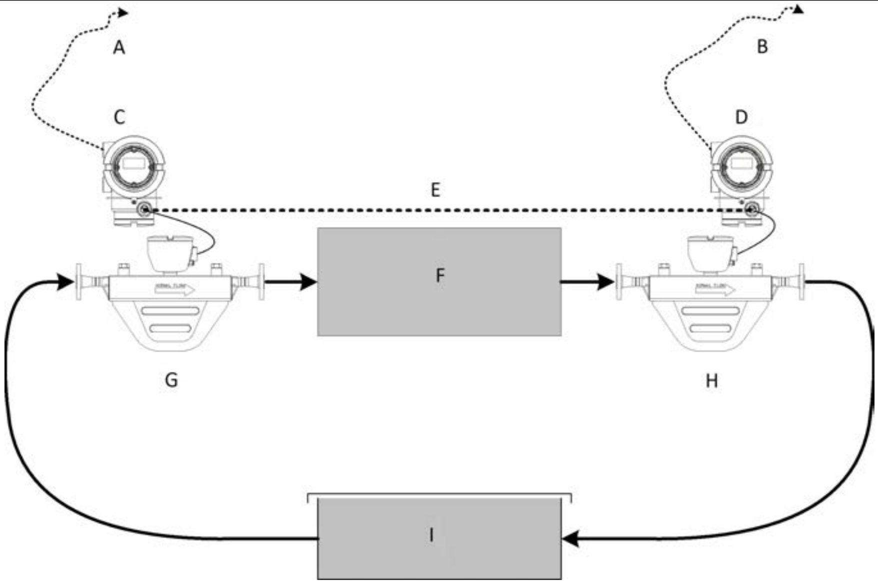
12.4 Use the fuel efficiency application

Restriction
Fuel efficiency process variables are available only over HART® with HART 7 enabled (default). Fuel efficiency parameters cannot be configured with HART.

12.4.1 Fuel efficiency application architecture

The Fuel efficiency application is designed to support fuel efficiency and fuel management projects and practices by providing accurate real-time fuel consumption data.

- Automatically calculates the fluid consumption between two Coriolis flow sensors, typically for recirculating fuel consumption loops
- Eliminates the need to program an external calculation system and minimizes common inaccuracies related to time lag, sampling issues and cumulative errors
- Uses a proprietary algorithm that adapts to the unique calibration of each pair of Coriolis flow sensors



A. Standard process variables
B. Standard and differential process variables
C. Supply transmitter
D. Return transmitter
E. HART cable
F. Engine
G. Supply sensor
H. Return sensor
I. Storage tank

12.5 Zero the meter

Display	**Menu → Service Tools → Verification & Calibration → Meter Zero → Zero Calibration**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Calibration → Smart Zero Verification and Calibration → Calibrate Zero**
Field communicator	**Service Tools → Maintenance → Calibration → Zero Calibration → Perform Auto Zero**

Zeroing the meter establishes a baseline for process measurement by analyzing the sensor's output when there is no flow through the sensor tubes.

Important
In most cases, the factory zero is more accurate than the field zero. Do not zero the meter unless one of the following is true:

- The zero is required by site procedures.
- The stored zero value fails the zero verification procedure.

Do not verify the zero or zero the meter if a high-severity alert is active. Correct the problem, then verify the zero or zero the meter. You may verify the zero or zero the meter if a low-severity alert is active.

Prerequisites

Before performing a field zero, execute the zero verification procedure to see whether or not a field zero can improve measurement accuracy.

Important
Do not verify the zero or zero the meter if a high-severity alert is active. Correct the problem, then verify the zero or zero the meter. You may verify the zero or zero the meter if a low-severity alert is active.

Procedure

1. Prepare the meter:
    a) Allow the meter to warm up for at least 20 minutes after applying power.
    b) Run the process fluid through the sensor until the sensor temperature reaches the normal process operating temperature.
    c) Stop flow through the sensor by shutting the downstream valve, and then the upstream valve if available.
    d) Verify that the sensor is blocked in, that flow has stopped, and that the sensor is completely full of process fluid.
    e) Observe the drive gain, temperature, and density readings. If they are stable, check the **Live Zero** or **Field Verification Zero** value. If the average value is close to 0, you should not need to zero the meter.
2. Modify **Zero Time**, if desired.

    Zero Time controls the amount of time the transmitter takes to determine its zero-flow reference point. The default **Zero Time** is 20 seconds. For most applications, the default **Zero Time** is appropriate.
3. Start the zero procedure and wait until it completes.
    When the calibration is complete:
    - If the zero procedure was successful, a `Calibration Success` message and a new zero value are displayed.
    - If the zero procedure failed, a `Calibration Failed` message is displayed.

Postrequisites

Restore normal flow through the sensor by opening the valves.

Need help?
If the zero fails:

- Ensure that there is no flow through the sensor, then retry.
- Remove or reduce sources of electromechanical noise, then retry.
- Set **Zero Time** to a lower value, then retry.
- If the zero continues to fail, contact customer service.
- If you want to restore the most recent valid value from transmitter memory:
    — Using the display: **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Verification and Calibration** → **Meter Zero** → **Restore Zero** → **Restore Previous Zero**
    — Using ProLink III: **Device Tools** → **Calibration** → **Smart Zero Verification and Calibration** → **Calibrate Zero** → **Restore Prior Zero**
    — Using a field communicator: Not available
- If you want to restore the factory zero:
    — Using the display: **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Verification and Calibration** → **Meter Zero** → **Restore Zero** → **Restore Factory Zero**
    — Using ProLink III: **Device Tools** → **Calibration** → **Smart Zero Verification and Calibration** → **Calibrate Zero** → **Restore Factory Zero**

— Using a field communicator: **Service Tools** → **Maintenance** → **Calibration** → **Zero Calibration** → **Restore Factory Zero**

Restriction
Restore the factory zero only if your meter was purchased as a unit, it was zeroed at the factory, and you are using the original components.

Related information

Verify the zero

12.5.1 Terminology used with zero verification and zero calibration

Term	Definition
Zero	In general, the offset required to synchronize the left pickoff and the right pickoff under conditions of zero flow. Unit = microseconds.
Factory zero	The zero value obtained at the factory, under laboratory conditions.
Field zero	The zero value obtained by performing a zero calibration outside the factory.
Prior zero	The zero value stored in the transmitter at the time a field zero calibration is begun. May be the factory zero or a previous field zero.
Manual zero	The zero value stored in the transmitter, typically obtained from a zero calibration procedure. It may also be configured manually. Also called “mechanical zero” or “stored zero”.
Live zero	The real-time bidirectional mass flow rate with no flow damping or mass flow cutoff applied. An adaptive damping value is applied only when the mass flow rate changes dramatically over a very short interval. Unit = configured mass flow measurement unit.
Zero stability	A laboratory-derived value used to calculate the expected accuracy for a sensor. Under laboratory conditions at zero flow, the average flow rate is expected to fall within the range defined by the zero stability value (0 ± zero stability). Each sensor size and model has a unique zero stability value.
Zero calibration	The procedure used to determine the zero value.
Zero time	The time period over which the zero calibration procedure is performed. Unit = seconds.
Field verification zero	A 3-minute running average of the Live Zero value, calculated by the transmitter. Unit = configured mass flow measurement unit.
Zero verification	A procedure used to evaluate the stored zero and determine whether or not a field zero can improve measurement accuracy.

12.6 Set up pressure compensation

Pressure compensation adjusts process measurement to compensate for the pressure effect on the sensor. The pressure effect is the change in the sensor’s sensitivity to flow and density caused by the difference between the calibration pressure and the process pressure.

Tip
Not all sensors or applications require pressure compensation. The pressure effect for a specific sensor model can be found in the product data sheet located at Emerson.com. If you are uncertain about implementing pressure compensation, contact customer service.

Prerequisites

You will need the flow factor, density factor, and calibration pressure values for your sensor.

- For the flow factor and density factor, see the product data sheet for your sensor.

- For the calibration pressure, see the calibration sheet for your sensor. If the data is unavailable, use 20 psi (1.38 bar).

You must be able to supply pressure data to the transmitter.

12.6.1 Set up pressure compensation using the display

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Pressure**.
2. Set **Units** to the pressure unit used by the external pressure device.
3. Enter **Flow Factor** for your sensor.

   The flow factor is the percent change in the flow rate per psi. When entering the value, reverse the sign.

   Example

   If the flow factor is −0.0002 % per psi, enter `+0.0002` % per PSI.

4. Enter **Density Factor** for your sensor.

   The density factor is the change in fluid density, in g/cm^3/psi. When entering the value, reverse the sign.

   Example

   If the density factor is −0.000006 g/cm^3/psi, enter `+0.000006` g/cm^3/PSI.

5. Set **Calibration Pressure** to the pressure at which your sensor was calibrated.

   The calibration pressure is the pressure at which your sensor was calibrated, and defines the pressure at which there is no pressure effect. If the data is unavailable, enter `20` PSI.

<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for pressure data.</td><td>a. Set Pressure Source to Poll for External Value.
b. Set Polling Slot to an available slot.
c. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
d. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the temperature device.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td><td>a. Set Pressure Source to Fixed Value or Digital Communications.
b. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td></tr>
</table>

Postrequisites

The current pressure value is displayed in the **External Pressure** field. Verify that the value is correct.

If you are using external temperature data, verify the external temperature value displayed in the ***Inputs*** group on the ProLink III main window.

Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **External Variables** and verify the value for External Pressure.

Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **Process** → **External Pressure** and verify the value.

Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **External Variables** and verify the value for External Temperature.

Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **Process** → **External Temperature** and verify the value for External Temperature.

Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Service Data** → **View Process Variables** and verify the value for External Temperature.

Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Service Data** → **View Process Variables** and verify the values for External Temperature and External Pressure.

Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **External Variables** and verify the values for External Temperature and External Pressure.

Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **Process** and verify the values for External Temperature and External Pressure.

Need help?
If the value is not correct:

- Ensure that the external device and the meter are using the same measurement unit.
- For polling:
  - Verify the wiring between the meter and the external device.
  - Verify the HART tag of the external device.

12.6.2 Set up pressure compensation using ProLink III

Procedure

1. Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Pressure Compensation**.
2. Set **Pressure Compensation Status** to Enabled.
3. Set **Pressure Unit** to the unit used by the external pressure device.
4. Enter the **Density Factor** and **Flow Factor** for your sensor.
    a) Set **Process Fluid** to Liquid Volume or Gas Standard Volume, as appropriate.
    b) Compare the values shown in **Recommended Density Factor** and **Recommended Flow Factor** to the values from the product data sheet.
    c) To use the recommended values, click **Accept Recommended Values**.
    d) To use different factors, enter your values in the **Density Factor** and **Flow Factor** fields.

    The density factor is the change in fluid density, in g/cm^3/psi. When entering the value, reverse the sign.

    Example

    If the density factor is −0.000006 g/cm^3/psi, enter `+0.000006` g/cm^3/PSI.

    The flow factor is the percent change in the flow rate per psi. When entering the value, reverse the sign.

Example

If the flow factor is −0.0002 % per psi, enter `+0.0002` % per PSI.

5. Set **Flow Calibration Pressure** to the pressure at which your sensor was calibrated.

   The calibration pressure is the pressure at which your sensor was calibrated, and defines the pressure at which there is no pressure effect. If the data is unavailable, enter `20` PSI.

<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th><th>Setup</th></tr>
<tr><td>Polling</td><td>The meter polls an external device for pressure data.</td><td>a. Set Pressure Source to Poll for External Value.
b. Set Polling Slot to an available slot.
c. Set Polling Control to Poll as Primary or Poll as Secondary.
<table>
<tr><th>Option</th><th>Description</th></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Primary</td><td>No other Primary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Poll as Secondary</td><td>No other Secondary HART masters will be on the network. A field communicator is not a HART master.</td></tr>
</table>
d. Set External Device Tag to the HART tag of the temperature device.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Digital communications</td><td>A host writes pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td><td>a. Set Pressure Source to Fixed Value or Digital Communications.
b. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.</td></tr>
</table>

Postrequisites

The current pressure value is displayed in the **External Pressure** field. Verify that the value is correct.

Need help?
If the value is not correct:

- Ensure that the external device and the meter are using the same measurement unit.
- For polling:
  - Verify the wiring between the meter and the external device.
  - Verify the HART tag of the external device.

12.6.3 Configure pressure compensation using a field communicator

Field communicator	**Configure → Manual Setup → Measurements → Optional Setup → External Pressure/ Temperature → Pressure**

Procedure

1. Set **Pressure Unit** to the unit used by the external pressure device.
2. Enable **Pressure Compensation**.

3. Set **Flow Calibration Pressure** to the pressure at which your sensor was calibrated.

   The calibration pressure is the pressure at which your sensor was calibrated, and defines the pressure at which there is no pressure effect. If the data is unavailable, enter `20` PSI.

4. Enter **Flow Press Factor** for your sensor.

   The flow factor is the percent change in the flow rate per psi. When entering the value, reverse the sign.

   Example

   If the flow factor is −0.0002 % per PSI, enter `+0.0002 % per PSI`.

5. Enter **Density Pressure Factor** for your sensor.

   The density factor is the change in fluid density, in g/cm^3/PSI. When entering the value, reverse the sign.

   Example

   If the density factor is −0.000006 g/cm^3/PSI, enter `+0.000006` g/cm^3/PSI.

6. Choose the method to be used to supply pressure data, and perform the required setup.

Method	Description	Setup
Digital communications	A host writes pressure data to the meter at appropriate intervals.	a. Using a field communicator, choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **External Pressure/Temperature** → **Pressure**. b. Set **Pressure Compensation** to Enable. c. Perform the necessary host programming and communications setup to write pressure data to the transmitter at appropriate intervals.

12.7 Validate the meter

Display	**Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Flow Variables** → **Mass Flow Settings** → **Meter Factor** **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Flow Variables** → **Volume Flow Settings** → **Meter Factor** **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Density** → **Meter Factor**
ProLink III	**Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Flow** → **Mass Flow Rate Meter Factor** **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Flow** → **Volume Flow Rate Meter Factor** **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Density** → **Density Meter Factor**
Field communicator	**Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Flow** → **Mass Factor** **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Flow** → **Volume Factor** **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Density** → **Density Factor**

Meter validation compares flow meter measurements reported by the transmitter to an external measurement standard. If the transmitter value for mass flow, volume flow, or density measurement is significantly different from the external measurement standard, you may want to adjust the corresponding meter factor. The flow meter's actual measurement is multiplied by the meter factor, and the resulting value is reported and used in further processing.

Prerequisites

Identify the meter factor(s) that you will calculate and set. You may set any combination of the three meter factors: mass flow, volume flow, and density. Note that all three meter factors are independent:

- The meter factor for mass flow affects only the value reported for mass flow.
- The meter factor for density affects only the value reported for density.
- The meter factor for volume flow affects only the value reported for volume flow or gas standard volume flow.

Important
To adjust volume flow, you must set the meter factor for volume flow. Setting a meter factor for mass flow and a meter factor for density will not produce the desired result. The volume flow calculations are based on original mass flow and density values, before the corresponding meter factors have been applied.

If you plan to calculate the meter factor for volume flow, be aware that validating volume in the field may be expensive, and the procedure may be hazardous for some process fluids. Therefore, because volume is inversely proportional to density, an alternative to direct measurement is to calculate the meter factor for volume flow from the meter factor for density. For instructions on this method, see Alternate method for calculating the meter factor for volume flow.

Obtain a reference device (external measurement device) for the appropriate process variable.

Important
For good results, the reference device must be highly accurate.

Procedure

1. Determine the meter factor as follows:
    a) Use the flow meter to take a sample measurement.
    b) Measure the same sample using the reference device.
    c) Calculate the meter factor using the following formula:

$$NewMeterFactor = ConfiguredMeterFactor \times \left(\frac{ReferenceMeasurement}{FlowmeterMeasurement}\right)$$

2. Ensure that the calculated meter factor does not fall outside 0.98 and 1.02. If the meter factor is outside these limits, contact customer service.
3. Configure the meter factor in the transmitter.

Calculating the meter factor for mass flow

The flow meter is installed and validated for the first time. The mass flow measurement from the transmitter is 250.27 lb. The mass flow measurement from the reference device is 250 lb. The mass flow meter factor is calculated as follows:

$$MeterFlow_{MassFlow} = 1 \text{ x} \left(\frac{250}{250.27}\right) = 0.9989$$

The first meter factor for mass flow is 0.9989.

One year later, the flow meter is validated again. The mass flow measurement from the transmitter is 250.07 lb. The mass flow measurement from the reference device is 250.25 lb. The new mass flow meter factor is calculated as follows:

$$MeterFlow_{MassFlow} = 0.9989 \text{ x} \left(\frac{250.25}{250.07}\right) = 0.9996$$

The new meter factor for mass flow is 0.9996.

12.7.1 Alternate method for calculating the meter factor for volume flow

The alternate method for calculating the meter factor for volume flow is used to avoid the difficulties that may be associated with the standard method.

This alternate method is based on the fact that volume is inversely proportional to density. It provides partial correction of the volume flow measurement by adjusting for the portion of the total offset that is caused by the density measurement offset. Use this method only when a volume flow reference is not available, but a density reference is available.

Procedure

1. Calculate the meter factor for density, using the standard method.
2. Calculate the meter factor for volume flow from the meter factor for density:

$$MeterFactor_{Volume} = \left(\frac{1}{MeterFactor_{Density}}\right)$$

   The following equation is mathematically equivalent to the first equation. You may use whichever version you prefer.

$$MeterFactor_{Volume} = ConfiguredMeterFactor_{Density} \times \left(\frac{Density_{Flowmeter}}{Density_{ReferenceDevice}}\right)$$

3. Ensure that the calculated meter factor does not fall outside 0.98 and 1.02. If the meter factor is outside these limits, contact customer service.
4. Configure the meter factor for volume flow in the transmitter.

12.8 Perform a (standard) D1 and D2 density calibration

Density calibration establishes the relationship between the density of the calibration fluids and the signal produced at the sensor. Density calibration includes the calibration of the D1 (low-density) and D2 (high-density) calibration points.

Important
Micro Motion flow meters are calibrated at the factory, and normally do not need to be calibrated in the field. Calibrate the flow meter only if you must do so to meet regulatory requirements. Contact customer support before calibrating the flow meter.

Tip
Use meter validation and meter factors, rather than calibration, to prove the meter against a regulatory standard or to correct measurement error.

Prerequisites

- During density calibration, the sensor must be completely filled with the calibration fluid, and flow through the sensor must be at the lowest rate allowed by your application. This is usually accomplished by closing the shutoff valve downstream from the sensor, then filling the sensor with the appropriate fluid.
- D1 and D2 density calibration require a D1 (low-density) fluid and a D2 (high-density) fluid. You may use air and water.
- If **LD Optimization** is enabled on your meter, disable it. To do this using a field communicator, choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **LD Optimization**. **LD Optimization** is used only with large sensors in hydrocarbon applications. If you are not using a field communicator, contact Emerson before continuing.
- The calibrations must be performed without interruption, in the order shown. Make sure that you are prepared to complete the process without interruption.

- Before performing the calibration, record your current calibration parameters. You can do this by saving the current configuration to a file on the PC. If the calibration fails, restore the known values.

12.8.1 Perform a D1 and D2 density calibration using the display

Procedure

1. Read the Prerequisites in Perform a (standard) D1 and D2 density calibration if you have not already done so.
2. Close the shutoff valve downstream from the sensor.
3. Fill the sensor with the D1 fluid and allow the sensor to achieve thermal equilibrium.
4. Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Verification and Calibration** → **Density Calibration**.
5. Perform the D1 calibration.
    a) Choose **D1 (Air)**.
    b) Enter the density of your D1 fluid.
    c) Choose **Start Calibration**.
    d) Wait for the calibration to complete.
    e) Choose **Finished**.
6. Fill the sensor with the D2 fluid and allow the sensor to achieve thermal equilibrium.
7. Perform the D2 calibration.
    a) Choose **D2 (Water)**.
    b) Enter the density of your D2 fluid.
    c) Choose **Start Calibration**.
    d) Wait for the calibration to complete.
    e) Choose **Finished**.
8. Open the shutoff valve.

Postrequisites

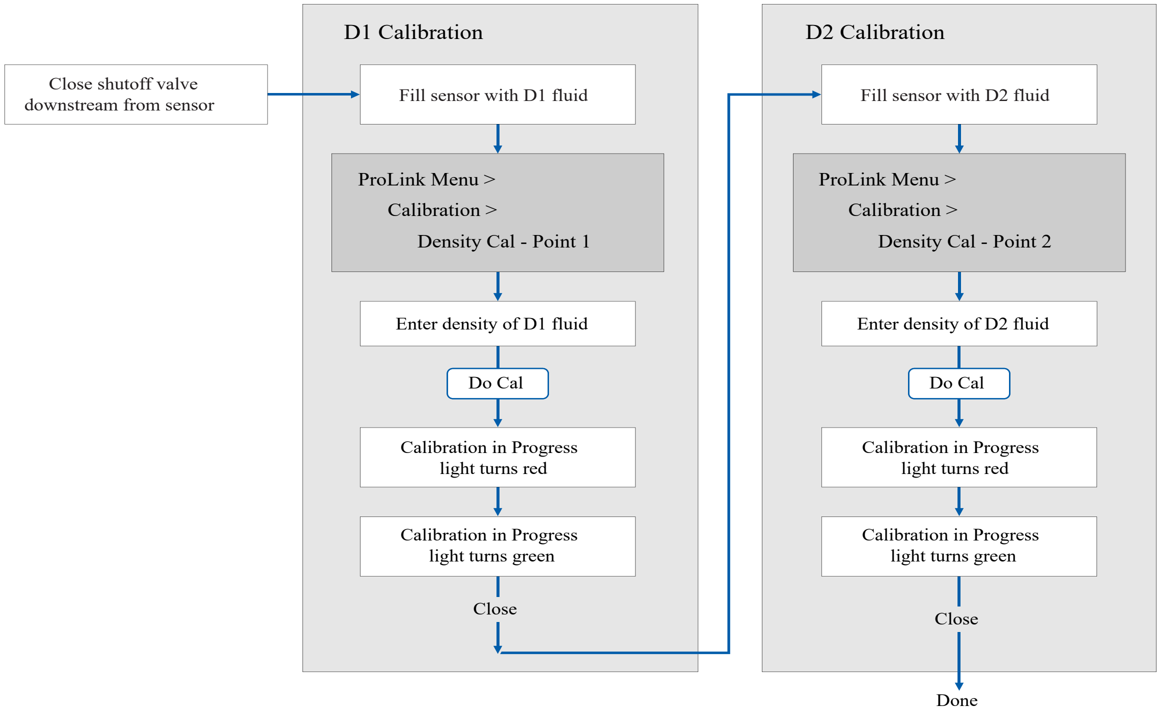
If you disabled **LD Optimization** before the calibration procedure, re-enable it.

12.8.2 Perform a D1 and D2 density calibration using ProLink III

Procedure

1. Read the Prerequisites in Perform a (standard) D1 and D2 density calibration if you have not already done so.
2. See the Figure 12-1.

Figure 12-1: D1 and D2 Calibration Work Flow Using ProLink III



Postrequisites

If you disabled **LD Optimization** before the calibration procedure, re-enable it.

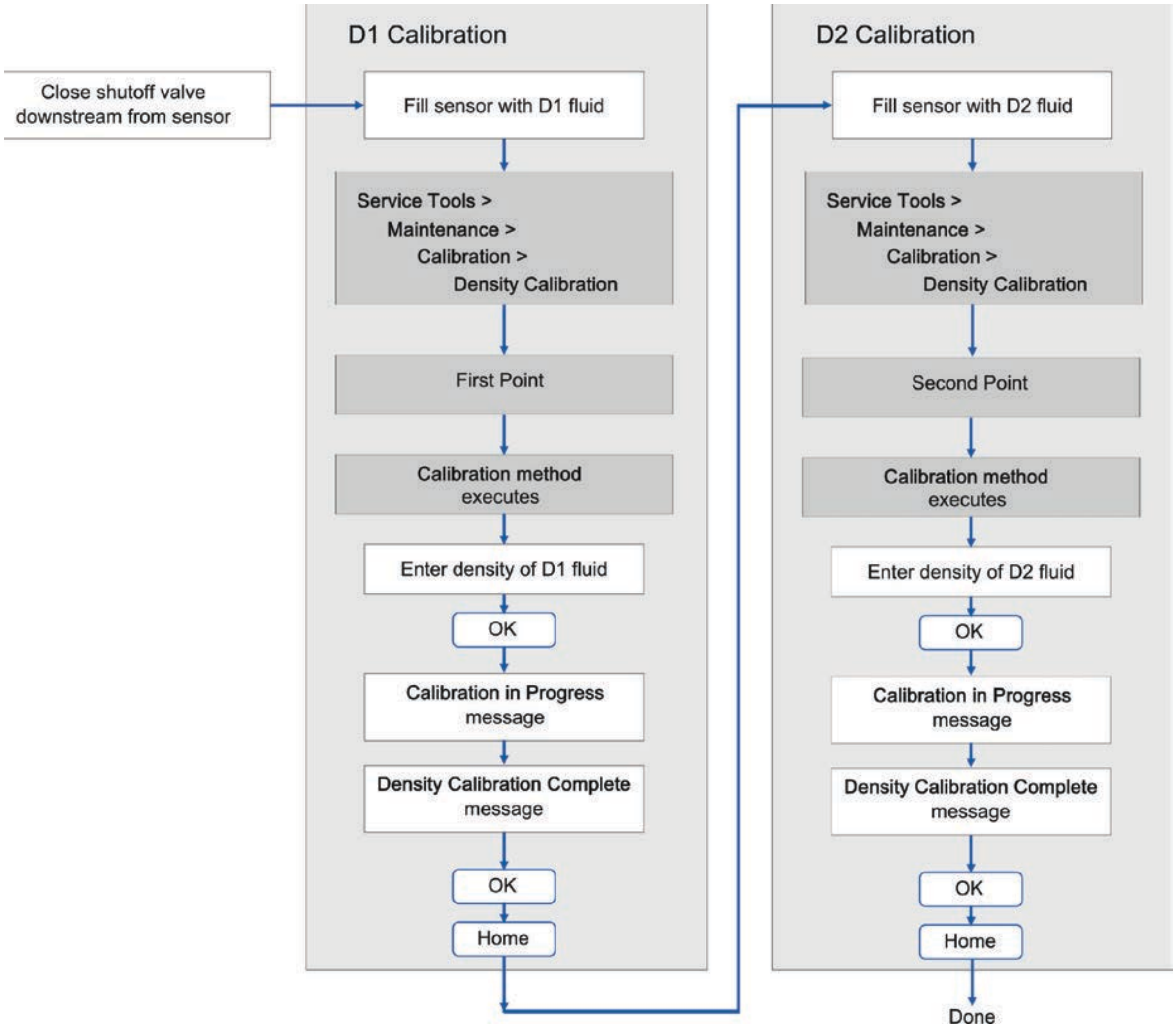
12.8.3

Procedure

1. Read the Prerequisites in Perform a (standard) D1 and D2 density calibration if you have not already done so.

2. See Figure 12-2.

Figure 12-2: D1 and D2 Calibration Work Flow with a Field Communicator



Postrequisites

If you disabled **LD Optimization** before the calibration procedure, re-enable it.

12.9 Adjust concentration measurement with Trim Offset

Trim Offset adjusts the meter's concentration measurement to match a reference value.

Tip
You can adjust concentration measurement by applying the trim offset only, or by applying both the trim offset and the trim slope. For most applications, the trim offset is sufficient.

Prerequisites

Ensure that the active matrix is the one that you want to trim. You can set the offset separately for each matrix on your transmitter.

You must be able to take a sample of your process fluid and obtain a laboratory concentration value at line density and line temperature.

Procedure

1. Take a concentration reading from the meter, and record line density and line temperature.
2. Take a sample of the process fluid and obtain a laboratory value for concentration at line density and line temperature, in the units used by the meter.
3. Subtract the meter value from the laboratory value.
4. Enter the result as the trim offset.
   - Using ProLink III: Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**, set **Matrix Being Configured** to your matrix, and enter **Trim Offset**.
   - Using a field communicator: Choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **Conc Measurement** → **Configure Matrix** and set **Matrix Being Configured** to your matrix. Then choose **Service Tools** → **Maintenance** → **Calibration** → **Trim CM Process Variables** and enter **Concentration Offset**.
5. Take another concentration reading from the meter, and compare it to the laboratory value.
   - If the two values are acceptably close, the trim is complete.
   - If the two values are not acceptably close, repeat this procedure.

Calculating the trim offset

Laboratory value	64.21 °Brix
Meter value	64.93 °Brix

$$64.21 - 64.93 = -0.72$$

Concentration offset: −0.72

12.10 Adjust concentration measurement with Trim Slope and Trim Offset

Trim Slope and **Trim Offset** adjust the meter's concentration measurement to match a reference value.

Tip
You can adjust concentration measurement by applying the trim offset only, or by applying both the trim offset and the trim slope. For most applications, the trim offset is sufficient.

Prerequisites

Ensure that the active matrix is the one that you want to trim. You can set the offset and slope separately for each matrix on your transmitter.

You must be able to take measurements of your process fluid at two different concentrations.

You must be able to take a sample of your process fluid at each of these concentrations.

For each sample, you must be able to obtain a laboratory concentration value at line density and line temperature.

Procedure

1. Collect data for Comparison 1.
   a) Take a concentration reading from the meter and record line density and line temperature.
   b) Take a sample of the process fluid at the current concentration.

c) Obtain a laboratory value for concentration at line density and line temperature, in the units used by the meter.

2. Collect data for Comparison 2.
   a) Change the concentration of your process fluid.
   b) Take a concentration reading from the meter and record line density and line temperature.
   c) Take a sample of the process fluid at the current concentration.
   d) Obtain a laboratory value for concentration at line density and line temperature, in the units used by the meter.
3. Populate the following equation with values from each comparison.

$$\mathrm{Concentration}_{\mathrm{Lab}} = (A \times \mathrm{Concentration}_{\mathrm{Meter}}) + B$$

4. Solve for A (slope).
5. Solve for B (offset), using the calculated slope and one set of values.
6. Enter the results as the trim slope and the trim offset.
   - Using ProLink III: Choose **Device Tools** → **Configuration** → **Process Measurement** → **Concentration Measurement**, set **Matrix Being Configured** to your matrix, and enter **Trim Slope** and **Trim Offset**.
   - Using a field communicator: Choose **Configure** → **Manual Setup** → **Measurements** → **Optional Setup** → **Conc Measurement** → **Configure Matrix** and set **Matrix Being Configured** to your matrix. Then choose **Service Tools** → **Maintenance** → **Calibration** → **Trim CM Process Variables** and enter **Concentration Slope** and **Concentration Offset**.
7. Take another concentration reading from the meter, and compare it to the laboratory value.
   - If the two values are acceptably close, the trim is complete.
   - If the two values are not acceptably close, repeat this procedure.

Calculating the trim slope and the trim offset

Comparison 1	Laboratory value	50.00%
	Meter value	49.98%
Comparison 2	Laboratory value	16.00%
	Meter value	15.99%

Populate the equations:

$$50 = (A \times 49.98) + B$$

$$16 = (A \times 15.99) + B$$

Solve for A:

$$50.00 - 16.00 = 34.00$$

$$49.98 - 15.99 = 39.99$$

$$34 = A \times 33.99$$

$$A = 1.00029$$

Solve for B:

$$50.00 = (1.00029 \times 49.98) + B$$

$$50.00 = 49.99449 + B$$

$$B = 0.00551$$

Concentration slope (A): 1.00029

Concentration offset (B): 0.00551

13 Maintenance

13.1 Install a new transmitter license

Display	**Menu → Service Tools → License Manager**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → Configuration → Feature License**
Field communicator	Not available

Whenever you purchase additional features or request a trial license, you must install a new transmitter license. The new license makes the new features available on your transmitter. For concentration measurement and API Referral, you may still need to enable the application.

Prerequisites

You must have a license file provided by Micro Motion:

- `perm.lic`: Permanent license file
- `temp.lic`: Temporary license file

Note
Manually enter the license key into either the display or ProLink III, or load the license directly through a USB drive to the USB-A service port.

Procedure

- To install a license using the display:
    a) Choose **Menu → Service Tools → License Manager**.
       Choose either **Enter Permanent License** or **Enter Trial License**
    b) Use the arrow keys to enter the license key.
- To install a license using ProLink III:
    a) Open the license file.
    b) Choose **Device Tools → Configuration → Feature License**.
    c) Copy the license from the file to the appropriate **License Key** field.

The features supported by the new license are displayed.

If you installed a temporary license, the transmitter will revert to its original feature set when the license period has expired. To purchase a feature for permanent use, contact customer support.

Postrequisites

If you installed a permanent license, update the options model code to match the new license. The options model code represents the installed features.

13.2 Upgrade the transmitter firmware

You can upgrade the transmitter firmware to stay current with development and to take advantage of any new features.

13.2.1 Using a USB drive with the display

You must have the firmware upgrade files provided by Micro Motion.

Prerequisites

The service port must be enabled. It is enabled by default. However, if you need to enable it, choose **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Security** and set **Service Port** to On.

Procedure

1. Copy the folder containing the firmware upgrade files to a USB drive.
2. Open the wiring compartment and insert the USB drive into the service port.

   WARNING
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

3. Follow the prompts once the transmitter recognizes the USB drive.
4. Select **USB Drive** → **Transmitter**.
5. Select **Update Device Software**.
6. Select the firmware upgrade folder and follow the prompts.

   Note
   If required, the transmitter upgrade procedure automatically includes an upgrade to the core processor software.

   If you chose to reboot the transmitter at a later date, you can reboot it from the menu, or you can power-cycle it.
7. Verify the transmitter configuration and all safety parameters.
8. Enable write-protection.

13.2.2 Using the USB service port and ProLink III

You can upgrade the transmitter firmware to stay current with development and to take advantage of any new features.

This procedure is not available over HART®. You must use a service port.

WARNING
If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

Prerequisites

You must have the firmware upgrade files provided by Emerson.

Procedure

1. In ProLink III, choose **Device Tools** → **Transmitter Software Update**.
2. Navigate to the folder containing the firmware upgrade files.
3. Select **Update**.

Note
If required, the transmitter upgrade procedure automatically includes an upgrade to the core processor software.

If you chose to reboot the transmitter at a later date, you can reboot it from the display, or you can power-cycle it.

4. Verify the transmitter configuration and all safety parameters.
5. Enable write-protection.

13.3 Reboot the transmitter

Display	**Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Reboot Transmitter**
ProLink III	Not available
Field communicator	**Service Tools** → **Maintenance** → **Reset/Restore** → **Device Reset**

For certain configuration changes to take effect, the transmitter must be rebooted. You must also reboot the transmitter in order to clear certain status alerts.

Rebooting the transmitter has the same effect as power-cycling the transmitter.

Prerequisites

Follow appropriate procedures to select the appropriate time for rebooting the transmitter. The reboot typically takes about 10 seconds.

Postrequisites

Check the transmitter clock. During the reboot, the transmitter clock is powered by the battery, therefore the transmitter clock and all timestamps should be accurate. If the transmitter clock is not correct, the battery may need replacement.

13.4 Battery replacement

The transmitter contains a battery that is used to power the clock when the transmitter is not powered up. Users cannot service or replace the battery. If the battery requires replacement, contact customer support.

If the battery is non-functional and the transmitter is powered down, then powered up, the clock will restart from the time of the power-down. All timestamps will be affected. You can correct the issue by resetting the transmitter clock. For a permanent resolution, the battery must be replaced.

14 Log files, history files, and service files

14.1 Generate history log files

Display	Requires a USB connection. **Menu → USB Options → Transmitter → USB Drive → Download Historical Files** **Menu → USB Options → Transmitter → USB Drive → Download Service Files**
ProLink III	**Device Tools → File Transfer → Download Historical Files**
Field communicator	Not available

The transmitter automatically saves historical data of several types, including Smart Meter Verification test results, and totalizer values. To access the historical data, you can generate a log file, then view it on your PC.

Prerequisites

The data historian for the 4700 transmitter is a licensable option and must be licensed in order to access the data. The data historian licensed can be added at the factory choosing the “HS” option in the 4700 model code or as an after shipment license listed in the spare parts section for the 4700 in the price list.

If you want to generate a totalizer history log, you must have previously configured the transmitter to record totalizer history. Totalizer history is not saved automatically.

Note
You can obtain these files from the Display if you use an attached USB drive to transfer the files from the device to the USB.

Procedure

1. **WARNING**
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

   If you are using the transmitter display, open the wiring compartment and insert the RS-485 adapter into the appropriate connections.
2. Select the type of log file that you want to generate.
3. If you selected historian data (process and diagnostic variables):
   a) Set the date and time for the first entry in the historian log file.
   b) Set the number of days that the log file will include.
   c) Select the record type.

Option	Description
1 Second Raw Data	The current values of process and diagnostic variables, recorded at 1-second intervals.
5 Min Average Data	The minimum and maximum values of the 1-second raw data over the last 5 minutes, plus the average and the standard deviation, recorded at 5-minute intervals.

   The system provides an estimated file size or transfer time.
4. Specify the location where the log file will be saved.

- If you are using ProLink III, the log file is written to a folder on your PC.

The log file is written to the specified location. File names are assigned as follows:

- Historian files: The file name is based on the transmitter tag, the starting date of the log contents, and the record type. The record type is shown as F or S:
  - F=Fast, for 10-second raw data
  - S=Slow, for 5-minute average data
- SMV files:
  - `SmvLast20Data.csv`
  - `SmvLongTermData.csv`
- Totalizer history files: `TotLog.txt`

14.2 Totalizer log

The totalizer log can track four configurable totals. The period is configurable; you can configure the transmitter to save totalizer and inventory values at a user-specified interval and then generate a totalizer log. The totalizer log is an ASCII file.

Contents of totalizer log

The totalizer log contains one record for each logged totalizer or inventory value. Each record contains the following information:

- Default totalizer or inventory name (user-specified names are not used)
- Value and measurement unit
- Timestamp
  - Format: Military time
  - Time and time zone: Transmitter clock

The totalizer log also contains a line item for each totalizer or inventory reset.

Note

- The historian totalizer log is configurable, but defaults to mass and volume totalizers logged at one hour intervals.
- The entire log saves 240 lines before rolling the last lines out, so 5 days of totalizer data are saved by default.

Totalizer logs and power cycles

If the transmitter is rebooted or power-cycled, the totalizer log is not affected.

Totalizer logs and configuration files

If you restore the factory configuration or upload a configuration file, the totalizer log is not affected.

Example: Totalizer log

===

Device UID: 22729F1F		Device Tag: SUPPLY	
Name	Value	Units	Time Zone: GMT-7.00

===

Mass Fwd Total	61.74707	grams	9/12/2020 20:00

Mass Fwd Inv	61.74705	grams	9/12/2020 20:00
Mass Fwd Total	61.74707	grams	9/12/2020 21:00
Mass Fwd Inv	61.74705	grams	9/12/2020 21:00
Mass Fwd Total	61.74707	grams	9/12/2020 22:00
Mass Fwd Inv	61.74705	grams	9/12/2020 22:00
Mass Fwd Total	61.74707	grams	9/12/2020 23:00
Mass Fwd Inv	61.74705	grams	9/12/2020 23:00
Mass Fwd Total	61.74707	grams	9/13/2020 0:00
Mass Fwd Inv	61.74705	grams	9/13/2020 0:00
...			

Note
The totalizer history displays only in English.

14.3 Generate service files

The transmitter automatically saves several types of service data that is useful in troubleshooting, device maintenance, and administration. You can view the data by generating a service file, using ProLink III to download it to your PC, and using your PC to open the file.

Prerequisites

You can either use a USB memory stick to download files directly through the USB-A service port, using either Display prompts or ProLink III, or you can use an RS-485 adapter with your Factory Use Only port in non-hazardous areas.

Procedure

1. **WARNING**
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

   Open the wiring compartment on the transmitter and connect the RS-485 adapter to the Factory Use Only port.
2. From ProLink III, choose **Device Tools** → **File Transfer** → **Download Service Files** .
3. Select the service file that you want to generate.

Service file	Description	File name
Audit Trail	All changes to configuration, including changes made by procedures such as zero calibration or density calibration.	`ConfgAuditLog.txt`
Alarm History	All occurrences of alerts and conditions, independent of alert severity.	`AlertLog.txt`
Historian: 2 Days	Values of selected process and diagnostic variables for the last two days, recorded at 1-second intervals.	Concatenated from transmitter tag and date
Service Snapshot	An ASCII file containing a snapshot of the transmitter's internal database. This file is used by customer service.	`service.dump`
Assert Log	A troubleshooting file used by customer service.	`AssertLog.txt`

4. Specify the folder on your PC where the log file will be saved.

14.3.1 Alert history and log

The alert history log is an ASCII file.

Contents of alert history

The alert history in the transmitter internal memory contains the 1000 most recent alert records. Each alert record contains the following information:

- Name of alert or condition
- Category:
  - — F=Failure
  - — FC=Function Check
  - — M=Maintenance Required
  - — OOS=Out of Specification
  - — I=Ignore
- Action:
  - — Active=Transition from inactive to active
  - — Inactive=Transition from active to inactive
  - — Toggling=More than 2 transitions in the last 60 seconds
- Timestamp
  - — Format: Military time
  - — Time and time zone: Transmitter clock
  - — Not displayed if Action=Toggling

Alert history and power-cycles

If the transmitter is rebooted or power-cycled, the 20 most recent records in alert history are retained in the transmitter internal memory. All earlier records are cleared from internal memory.

Alert history and configuration files

If you restore the factory configuration or upload a configuration file, alert history is not affected.

14.3.2 Configuration audit history and log

The transmitter automatically saves information about all configuration events to its internal memory. The configuration audit log is an ASCII file.

Contents of configuration audit log

The configuration audit log contains a record for every change to transmitter configuration, including changes resulting from zero calibration, density calibration, etc. Each record contains:

- Modbus location in transmitter memory
  - — C*nnn* = Coil
  - — R*nnn* = Register
  - — R*nnn xxx* = Array, indexed by register *xxx*
- Name of Modbus location
- Original value

- New value
- Measurement unit, if applicable
- Timestamp
  — Format: Military time
  — Time and time zone: Transmitter clock
- Host or protocol from which the change was made

Configuration audit history and power-cycles

If the transmitter is power-cycled or rebooted, the event is logged in the configuration audit history. Earlier records are not affected.

Configuration audit history and configuration files

If you restore the factory configuration or upload a configuration file, the event is logged in the configuration audit history. Earlier records are not affected.

Example: Configuration audit log

```
==================================================================================
Device UID: 22729F1F
Device Tag: SUPPLY
Addr    Name             Old Value    New Value    Unit    Time Zone: GMT-7:00     Host
==================================================================================
C167    SYS_CfgFile_Re   0            1                    09/SEP/2019 11:35:11    Display
C167    SYS_CfgFile_Re   0            0                    09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
1167    IO_ChannelB_As   10           4                    09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
351     SNS_API2540Tab   81           100                  09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
40      SNS_DensityUni   91           92                   09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
44      SNS_PressureUn   6            12                   09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
14      FO_1_Source      0            5                    09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
1180    MAI_Source       251          55                   09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
275     MAI_mA20Var      0            250.0        °C      09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
4961    FO_2_Source      0            5                    09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
68      SYS_Tag          FT-0000      SUPPLY               09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
159     SNS_K1           1606.9       1606.4               09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
161     SNS_K2           1606.9       7354                 09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
163     SNS_DensityTem   5.66         4.44                 09/SEP/2019 11:35:12    Other
...
```

Note
The configuration audit log displays only in English.

14.3.3 Assert history and log

The transmitter automatically saves information about all asserts. You can generate an assert log for use by customer service. The assert log is an ASCII file.

Contents of assert log

The assert history contains the 25 most recent asserts. An assert is an unusual event in the transmitter firmware that may indicate an error or malfunction. A list of asserts can be useful for troubleshooting by customer service. The assert log is not designed for customer use.

Assert history and power-cycles

Assert history is not affected by reboots or power-cycles.

Assert history and configuration files

If you restore the factory configuration or upload a configuration file, assert history is not affected.

15 Troubleshooting

15.1 Overview

This chapter describes guidelines and procedures for troubleshooting the flow meter. The information in this chapter will enable you to:

- Categorize the problem
- Determine whether you are able to correct the problem
- Take corrective measures (if possible)
- Contact the appropriate support agency

Note
All ProLink III procedures provided in this section assume that your computer is already connected to the transmitter and you have established communication. All ProLink III procedures also assume that you are complying with all applicable safety requirements. For more information, see Using ProLink III with the transmitter.

Note
All Communicator key sequences in this section assume that you are starting from the ***Online*** menu. For more information, see Using a field communicator with the transmitter.

15.2 Status alerts, causes, and recommendations

The following alerts apply to the transmitter. Numbered alerts are presented in numerical order, followed by unnumbered alerts in alphabetical order.

15.2.1 [001] EEPROM Checksum Error (Core Processor)

Alert

Checksum Error

Cause

An uncorrectable checksum mismatch has been detected.

Recommended actions

1. Reboot or power-cycle the transmitter to see if the alert clears.
2. Contact customer service.

15.2.2 [003] Sensor Failed

Alert

Sensor Failed

Cause

Recommended actions

1. Check the drive gain and the pickoff voltage.
2. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.

3. Check the sensor coils for electrical shorts. If you find problems, replace the sensor. Refer to Check for internal electrical problems.
4. Check the integrity of the sensor tubes.
5. Ensure that the sensor is completely full or completely empty.
6. Replace the sensor.
7. Contact customer service.

15.2.3 [004] Temperature Sensor Out of Range

Alert

Sensor Failed

Cause

The value computed for the resistance of the line RTD is outside limits.

Recommended actions

1. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter. Refer to Check sensor to transmitter wiring.
2. Verify that the process temperature is within range of the sensor and the transmitter.
3. Check the sensor coils for electrical shorts. If you find problems, replace the sensor. Refer to Check for internal electrical problems.
4. Check the feedthrough pins. Contact customer service for assistance. If you find problems, replace the sensor.
5. Contact customer service.

15.2.4 [005] Mass Flow Rate Overrange

Alert

Extreme Primary Purpose Variable

Cause

The measured flow is outside the sensor's flow limits.

Recommended actions

1. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
2. Verify that the transmitter is configured correctly for the connected sensor.
3. Check for two-phase flow.

   Refer to Check for two-phase flow (slug flow).
4. Contact customer service.

15.2.5 [006] Transmitter Not Characterized Not Configured

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

Combination of 020 and 021.

Recommended actions

1. Check the characterization. Specifically, verify the FCF and K1 values. Refer to Characterize the meter (if required).
2. Contact customer service.

15.2.6 [008] Density Overrange

Alert

Cause

Recommended actions

1. If other alerts are present, resolve those alert conditions first.
2. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
3. Check for two-phase flow by checking for two-phase alerts. If two-phase flow is the problem, alerts will be posted.
4. Contact customer service.

15.2.7 [009] Transmitter Initializing

Alert

Cause

The transmitter is in power-up mode.

Recommended actions

Allow the meter to complete its power-up sequence. The alert should clear automatically.

15.2.8 [010] Calibration Failed

Alert

Cause

The calibration failed.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that your calibration procedure meets the documented requirements.
2. Reboot or power-cycle the transmitter.
3. Retry the procedure.

15.2.9 [011] Excess Calibration Correction, Zone too Low

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

Refer to 010.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that there is no flow through the sensor, then retry.

2. Power-cycle the flow meter, then retry.
3. If appropriate, restore the factory zero to return the flow meter to operation.

15.2.10 [012] Excess Calibration Correction Zero too High

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

Refer to 010.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that there is no flow through the sensor, then retry.
2. Power-cycle the flow meter, then retry.
3. If appropriate, restore the factory zero to return the flow meter to operation.

15.2.11 [013] Process too Noisy to perform Auto Zero

Alert

Noisy Process

Cause

Similar to 010.

Recommended actions

1. Remove or reduce sources of electromechanical noise, then retry. Sources of noise include:
   - Mechanical pumps
   - Pipe stress at sensor
   - Electrical interference
   - Vibration effects from nearby machinery
2. Reboot or power-cycle the flow meter to see if the alert clears.
3. If appropriate, restore the factory zero to return the flow meter to operation.

15.2.12 [014] Transmitter Failed Not Configured

Alert

Transmitter Initializing

Cause

Many possible causes.

Recommended actions

1. Reboot or power-cycle the transmitter to see if the alert clears.
2. Contact customer service.

15.2.13 [016] Sensor Temperature (RTD) Failure

Alert

Sensor Failed

Cause

The value computed for the resistance of the line RTD is outside limits.

Recommended actions

1. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.
   a) Refer to the installation manual and ensure that the wiring has been performed according to instructions. Obey all applicable safety messages.
   b) Verify that the wires are making good contact with the terminals.
   c) Perform RTD resistance checks and check for shorts to case. If you find problems, replace the sensor.
   d) Check the continuity of all wires from the transmitter to the sensor.
2. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
3. Check the feedthrough pins. Contact customer service for assistance. If you find problems, replace the sensor.
4. Check the core processor housing for moisture, corrosion, or verdigris.
5. Check the junction box for moisture, corrosion, or verdigris.
6. Contact customer service.

15.2.14 [017] Sensor Case Temperature (RTD) Failure

Alert

Sensor Failed

Cause

The values computed for the resistance of the meter and case RTDs are outside limits.

Recommended actions

1. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.
   a) Refer to the installation manual and ensure that the wiring has been performed according to instructions. Obey all applicable safety messages.
   b) Verify that the wires are making good contact with the terminals.
   c) Perform RTD resistance checks and check for shorts to case. If you find problems, replace the sensor.
   d) Check the continuity of all wires from the transmitter to the sensor.
2. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
3. Contact customer service.

15.2.15 [018] EEPROM Error (Transmitter)

Alert

Electronics Failed

Cause

There is an internal memory problem with the transmitter. This alert will not clear until you reboot or power-cycle the transmitter.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that all wiring compartment covers are installed correctly.
2. Ensure that all transmitter wiring meets specifications and that all cable shields are properly terminated.
3. Ensure that all meter components are grounded properly.
4. Evaluate the environment for sources of high electromagnetic interference (EMI) and relocate the transmitter or wiring as necessary.
5. Reboot or power-cycle the transmitter to see if the alert clears.
6. If the alert persists, replace the transmitter.

15.2.16 [019] RAM Error

Alert

Electronics Failed

Cause

There is a ROM checksum mismatch in the transmitter or the RAM address location cannot be written in the transmitter. This alert will not clear until you reboot or power cycle the transmitter.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that all wiring compartment covers are installed correctly.
2. Ensure that all transmitter wiring meets specifications and that all cable shields are properly terminated.
3. Ensure that all meter components are grounded properly.
4. Evaluate the environment for sources of high electromagnetic interference (EMI) and relocate the transmitter or wiring as necessary.
5. Reboot or power-cycle the transmitter to see if the alert clears.
6. If the alert persists, replace the transmitter.

15.2.17 [020] Calibration Factors Missing

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

Some calibration factors have not been entered or are incorrect.

Recommended actions

1. Verify characterization parameters (specifically Flow Cal Factor and K1 values). Refer to .
2. Verify the setting of the **Sensor Type** parameter.
3. If **Sensor Type** = Curved Tube, ensure that no parameters specific to Straight Tube have been set.
4. Check the feedthrough pins. If you find problems, replace the sensor.

   Contact customer service for assistance.
5. Check the core processor housing for moisture, corrosion, or verdigris.

6. Check the junction box for moisture, corrosion, or verdigris.
7. Check the sensor coils for electrical shorts. If you find problems, replace the sensor.

15.2.18 [021] Incorrect Sensor Type

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

Transmitter verification of sensor circuits and characterization has produced a discrepancy. The transmitter cannot operate the sensor.

Recommended actions

1. Verify the setting of the **Sensor Type** parameter.
2. Verify characterization parameters (specifically Flow Cal Factor and K1 values). Refer to .
3. Contact customer service.

15.2.19 [030] Incorrect Board Type

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

The firmware or configuration loaded in the transmitter is incompatible with the board type.

Recommended actions

1. If this alarm occurred in conjunction with an effort to load a configuration into the transmitter, confirm that the transmitter is of the same model as the one the configuration came from.
2. Reboot or power-cycle the transmitter to see if the alert clears.
3. If the problem persists, contact customer service.

15.2.20 [033] Insufficient Pickoff Signal

Alert

Tube Not Full

Cause

The signal from the sensor pickoffs is insufficient for operation (enhanced core processor only).

Recommended actions

1. Check for two-phase flow.
2. Check the sensor tubes for plugging or coating.
3. Check for fluid separation by monitoring the density value and comparing the results against expected density values.
4. Ensure that the sensor orientation is appropriate for your application. Settling from a two-phase or three-phase fluid can cause this alert even if the flow tubes are full.

15.2.21 [034] Smart Meter Verification Failed

Alert

Function Check Failed or Smart Meter Verification Aborted

Cause

The current Smart Meter Verification value is statistically different than the factory baseline value.

Recommended actions

Minimize process instability and repeat the test.

15.2.22 [035] Smart Meter Verification Aborted

Alert

Function Check Failed or Smart Meter Verification Aborted

Cause

The Smart Meter Verification test did not complete, possibly because it was manually aborted or because process conditions were too unstable.

Recommended actions

1. Minimize process instability and repeat the test.
2. Check the Smart Meter Verification abort code and take appropriate steps.
3. Contact customer service.

Table 15-1: SMV aborts code

Abort code	Abort reason	Abort recommendation
1	Manual abort by end user	Not available
2	SMV timeout	Check status of pickoff and drive coils.
3	Pickoff Voltage low	Check status of pickoff and drive coils.
4	Temperature unstable	Ensure temperature is stable. Start again.
5	Cal state in progress	Not available
6	Unused	Not available
7	Drive loop AGC reported an amplitude error	Check status of pickoff and drive coils.
8	High flow (dt) standard deviation	Reduce flow rate and start again.
9	High flow (dt) mean value	Reduce flow rate and start again.
10	State in progress	Not available
11	Verification complete	Not available
12	Transmitter in fault	Clear alarms before proceeding.
13	No factory air verification	Perform factory calibration on air.
14	No factory water verification	Perform factory calibration on water.
15	Drive frequency drift from carrier frequency	Ensure temperature, flow, and density are stable. Start again.

15.2.23 [100] mA Output 1 Saturated

Alert

Output Saturated

Cause

The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.

Recommended actions

1. Check the settings of **Upper Range Value** and **Lower Range Value**.
   Refer to Configure Lower Range Value (LRV) and Upper Range Value (URV) for an mA Output.
2. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
3. Ensure that both devices are using the same measurement unit.
4. Purge the sensor tubes.

15.2.24 [101] mA Output 1 Fixed

Alert

Output Fixed

Cause

One of the following conditions have occurred:

- The HART address is set to a non-zero value
- A loop test is running
- The output is configured to send a constant value (**mA Output Action** or **Loop Current Mode**)

Recommended actions

1. Check the HART address and **mA Output Action**, or **Loop Current Mode**.
2. Check to see if a loop test is in process (the output is fixed).
3. Exit the mA Output trim, if applicable.

15.2.25 [102] Drive Overrange

Alert

Drive Over-Range

Cause

The drive power (current/ voltage) is at its maximum.

Recommended actions

1. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
2. Check for air in the flow tubes, tubes not filled, foreign material in the tubes, coating in the tubes, or other process problems.
3. Verify that the tubes are full of process fluid.
4. Check the drive gain and the pickoff voltage.
   Refer to Check the pickoff voltage.
5. Check the sensor coils for electrical shorts. If you find problems, replace the sensor.

Refer to Check for internal electrical problems.

6. Ensure that the sensor orientation is appropriate for your application.
   Settling from a two-phase or three-phase fluid can cause this alert even if the flow tubes are full.

15.2.26 [104] Calibration in Progress

Alert

Function Check in Progress

Cause

A calibration is running.

Recommended actions

Allow the test to complete.

15.2.27 [105] Two-Phase Flow

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

Recommended actions

Check for two-phase flow.
Refer to Configure Lower Range Value (LRV) and Upper Range Value (URV) for an mA Output.

15.2.28 [106] Burst Mode Enabled AI or AO Simulate Active

Alert

Burst Mode

Cause

The device is in HART burst mode.

Recommended actions

1. No action required.
2. If desire, reconfigure the alarm severity to ignore.

15.2.29 [107] Power Reset Occurred

Alert

Power

Cause

The transmitter has been restarted.

Recommended actions

1. No action required.
2. If desire, reconfigure the alarm severity to ignore.

15.2.30 [110] Frequency Output 1 Saturated

Alert

Output Saturated

Cause

The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.

Recommended actions

1. Check the scaling of the Frequency Output.
2. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
3. Ensure that both devices are using the same measurement unit.
4. Purge the sensor tubes.

15.2.31 [111] Frequency Output 1 Fixed

Alert

Output Fixed

Cause

The output is configured to send a constant value. A loop test may be in progress.

Recommended actions

Check to see if a loop test is in process (the output is fixed).

15.2.32 Frequency Output 2 Fixed

Alert

Output Fixed

Cause

The output is configured to send a constant value. A loop test may be in progress.

Recommended actions

Check to see if a loop test is in process (the output is fixed).

15.2.33 Frequency Output 2 Saturated

Alert

Output Saturated

Cause

The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.

Recommended actions

1. Check the scaling of the Frequency Output.
2. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
3. Ensure that both devices are using the same measurement unit.
4. Purge the sensor tubes.

15.2.34 [113] mA Output Saturated

Alert

Output Saturated

Cause

The calculated output value is outside the range of the output.

Recommended actions

1. Check the settings of **Upper Range Value** and **Lower Range Value**.
   Refer to Configure Lower Range Value (LRV) and Upper Range Value (URV) for an mA Output.
2. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
3. Ensure that both devices are using the same measurement unit.
4. Purge the sensor tubes.

15.2.35 [114] mA Output 2 Fixed

Alert

Output Fixed

Cause

The output is configured to send a constant value. A loop test may be in progress.

Recommended actions

1. Check to see if a loop test is in process (the output is fixed).
2. Exit the mA Output trim, if applicable.

15.2.36 [115] External Input Error

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

The connection to an external measurement device has failed. No external data is available.

Recommended actions

1. Verify that the external device is operating correctly.
2. Verify the wiring between the transmitter and the external device.

15.2.37 [116] Temperature Overrange (API Referral)

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

The line temperature is outside the range of the API table.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that process temperature is within the range of the API table.

2. Verify the configuration of the API Referral application and related parameters.

15.2.38 [117] Density Overrange (API Referral)

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

The line density is outside the range of the API table.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that process density is within the range of the API table.
2. Verify the configuration of the API Referral application and related parameters.

15.2.39 [118] Discrete Output 1 Fixed

Alert

Output Fixed

Cause

The output is configured to send a constant state. A loop test may be in progress.

Recommended actions

Check to see if a loop test is in process (the output is fixed).

15.2.40 [119] Discrete Output 2 Fixed

Alert

Output Fixed

Cause

The output is set to a constant state. A loop test may be in progress.

Recommended actions

Check to see if a loop test is in process (the output is fixed).

15.2.41 [120] Curve Fit Failure (Concentration)

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

Recommended actions

1. Verify the configuration of the concentration measurement application.
2. Contact customer service.

15.2.42 [121] Extrapolation Alert (Concentration)

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

The line density or line temperature is outside the range of the concentration matrix plus the configured extrapolation limit.

Recommended actions

Verify the configuration of the concentration measurement application.

15.2.43 [123] Pressure Overrange (API Referral)

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

The line pressure is outside the range of the API table.

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that process pressure is within the range of the API table.
2. Verify the configuration of the API Referral application and related parameters.

15.2.44 [131] Smart Meter Verification in Progress

Alert

Function Check in Progress

Cause

A Smart Meter Verification test is running.

Recommended actions

Allow the test to complete.

15.2.45 [132] Sensor Simulation Active

Alert

Sensor Being Simulated

Cause

Sensor simulation mode is enabled (enhanced core processor only).

Recommended actions

Disable sensor simulation.

15.2.46 Clock Failure

Alert

Data Loss Possible

Cause

The transmitter real-time clock is not incrementing.

Recommended actions

Contact customer service.

15.2.47 Enhanced Event *X* Active

Alert

Event Active

Cause

The conditions assigned to any enhanced event (Enhanced Event 1 through Enhanced Event 5) are present.

Recommended actions

1. If this is an accurate indication of process conditions, no action is required. The alert will clear when the process returns to normal.
2. Review event configuration if you believe the event was triggered erroneously.

15.2.48 Moderate Two Phase Flow

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

The transmitter has detected moderate two-phase flow.

Recommended actions

Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.

15.2.49 No Permanent License

Alert

Data Loss Possible

Cause

A permanent license has not been installed in the transmitter firmware.

Recommended actions

1. If you have a permanent license, install it.
2. If you do not have a permanent license, contact customer service.

15.2.50 Password Not Set

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

Display security has been enabled but the display password has not been changed from the default value.

Recommended actions

Configure a password or disable display security.

15.2.51 Severe Two Phase Flow

Alert

Process Aberration

Cause

The transmitter has detected severe two-phase flow.

Recommended actions

Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.

15.2.52 Time Not Entered

Alert

Configuration Error

Cause

The system time has not been entered. The system time is required for diagnostic logs.

Recommended actions

Set the system time.

15.2.53 Verification of mA Output 1 Failed

Cause

The reading of the mA Input does not match the reading of mA Output 1.

Recommended actions

If the alert persists, replace the transmitter.

15.2.54 Watchdog Error

Alert

Electronics Failed

Cause

The watchdog timer has expired.

Recommended actions

Contact customer support.

15.3 Perform a core processor resistance test

This procedure measures the resistance between the core processor terminals in the transmitter junction box. The procedure applies only to 4-wire remote installations and remote core processor with remote transmitter installations.

Note
Although you can perform the same test on the terminals at the core processor, the transmitter junction box is typically easier to access.

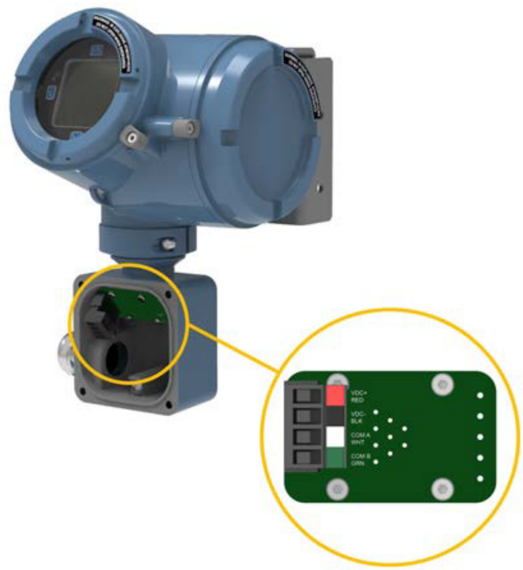
Procedure

1. Power down the transmitter.
2. Remove the cover of the junction box on the transmitter to access the core processor terminals.

Figure 15-1: Removing the cover of the junction box

3. Disconnect the 4-wire cable between the transmitter and the sensor.
4. Identify the core processor terminals inside the transmitter junction box.

Figure 15-2: Core processor terminals inside the transmitter junction box



5. For the 700 core processor only, measure the resistance between the terminal pairs listed here.

Terminal pair (transmitter)	Terminal pair (core processor)	Function	Expected resistance
White – green	3–4	RS-485/A and RS-485/B	29 kΩ to 33 kΩ
Black – white	2–3	VDC– and RS-485/A	29 kΩ to 33 kΩ
Black – green	2–4	VDC– and RS-485/B	16 kΩ to 18 kΩ

6. If any resistance measurements are lower than specified, contact customer service.
7. If the resistance measurements fall within the expected ranges, return the transmitter to normal operation and check the wiring between the transmitter and the core processor. If that does not resolve the problem, contact customer service.

Postrequisites

To return to normal operation:

1. Reconnect the 4-wire cable from the sensor to the core processor terminals.
2. Replace the junction box cover.
3. Restore power to the transmitter.

15.4 Transmitter does not communicate

If the transmitter does not appear to be communicating, the wiring may be faulty or the communications device may be incompatible.

- For HART network communications, refer to Check HART communications
- For RS-485 Modbus network communications, refer to Perform a core processor resistance test.
- For communication using a communication device, check the wiring and the communication device. Refer to either Using ProLink III with the transmitter or Using a field communicator with the transmitter.

If you can read data from the transmitter but cannot write data (that is, you cannot start, stop or reset totalizers or change transmitter configuration), check to see if the transmitter is writen protected, and disable write protection if required.

15.5 Bluetooth® alert

Category	Maintenance Required

Cause

A Bluetooth error has been detected.

The field device will continue to function independent of this Bluetooth alert.

Recommended actions

1. Click the **Details** button for more information.
2. Follow the instructions to correct the Bluetooth error.

15.5.1 Bluetooth® functionality limited

Cause

Device is unable to send device data over Bluetooth due to an internal error.

The field device will continue to function independent of this Bluetooth alert.

Recommended actions

1. Restart the device.
2. Check the electrical connection (remove and re-mount the Bluetooth display).
3. Replace Bluetooth display.
4. If the condition persists, replace the transmitter electronics.

15.5.2 Bluetooth® electronics error

Cause

Device internal diagnostics detected a Bluetooth electronics error.

This error will likely result in reduced or no Bluetooth communication capability; the field device will continue to function independent of this Bluetooth alert.

Recommended actions

1. Restart the device.
2. Replace Bluetooth display.

15.5.3 Bluetooth® firmware out of date

Cause

This incompatibility will result in no Bluetooth communications; the field device will continue to function independent of this Bluetooth alert.

Recommended actions

Update the Bluetooth firmware.

15.6 Reset the Bluetooth® key

Procedure

1. From the AMS Device Configuration application, reset Bluetooth to the Factory Admin by selecting the hamburger menu (≡) and then selecting **Disconnect From Application**.

   Before continuing, ensure there is no active communication between the Bluetooth device and the transmitter.

2. From the transmitter display, select **Main menu** → **Configuration** → **Security** → **Bluetooth Security** → **Reset Security**.
3. Select **Yes** and click **Finished**.
   The system responds with a message informing you that you have 15 minutes to enable the Factory Admin.
4. Go to the AMS Device Configuration application and select the hamburger menu (≡) from the top left corner.
5. Select **Settings** → **Clear Devices** → **Login as Factory Admin**, specifying the UID and the default key.

15.7 Reset Bluetooth® security using a wired connection

Procedure

1. From a wired connection, enable the security reset mode (**Bluetooth Radio**) within the BLE subsystem from either the display or the host.

   Before continuing, ensure there is no active communication between the Bluetooth device and the transmitter.

2. Click the **Reset Bluetooth Security** button.
   If disabled, this step enables the Factory Default PSK user key in the BLE subsystem., which allows the user to invoke the AMS device configurator mobile application to establish a secure connection as a Factory Admin. user.
3. Within 15 minutes, log into the AMS device configurator mobile application as a Factory Admin.
   After a successful log in:

   a. Both the Admin and Maintenance roles are disabled.

   b. Associated passcodes are erased.

   c. The number of security resets increment.

   d. The connection is terminated.

4. Select **Settings** → **Clear Devices** → **Log in as Factory Admin**, specifying the UID and the default key.
5. Setup Admin and Maintenance user roles.

15.8 API Referral troubleshooting

15.8.1 Extrapolation alert is active

Cause

Line pressure, line temperature, or line density is outside the range of the configured API table.

Recommended actions

1. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.

2. Verify the configuration of the API Referral application and related parameters.

15.8.2 Inaccurate referred density reading

Cause

- Inaccurate density measurement
- Inaccurate temperature measurement
- Incorrect reference conditions
- Incorrect API table selection

Recommended actions

1. Verify the line density value.
2. Verify the line temperature value.
3. Ensure that the application is configured to use the appropriate temperature source.
4. Ensure that the pressure source is configured correctly, that the external pressure device is operating correctly, and that both devices are using the same measurement units.
5. Ensure that reference temperature and reference pressure, if applicable, are configured correctly.
6. Ensure that the selected API table is appropriate for the process fluid.

15.9 Concentration measurement troubleshooting

15.9.1 Significantly incorrect CM after loading matrix

Cause

The wrong temperature or density unit was configured when the matrix was loaded.

Recommended actions

Set the temperature and density units to the units used when the matrix was built, then reload the matrix. For custom matrices, contact customer support.

15.9.2 Inaccurate CM reading

Cause

- Inaccurate density measurement
- Inaccurate temperature measurement
- Incorrect reference conditions
- Incorrect matrix data
- Inappropriate trim values

Recommended actions

1. Verify the line density value.
2. Verify the line temperature value.
3. Ensure that the application is configured to use the appropriate temperature source.
4. Ensure that reference temperature is configured correctly.
5. Ensure that the appropriate matrix is active.

6. Ensure that the matrix is configured correctly.
7. Adjust the extrapolation limits for the active matrix.
8. Adjust measurement with a concentration offset trim.

15.10 Density measurement troubleshooting

15.10.1 Erratic density reading

Cause

- Normal process noise
- Two-phase flow
- Line pressure too low
- The flow rate is too high for the installation
- Pipe diameter too small
- Contaminants or suspended solids in the process gas
- Contaminants or suspended solids in the process fluid
- Vibration in the pipeline
- Erosion or corrosion

Recommended actions

1. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
2. Increase the density damping value.
3. Decrease the flow rate.
4. Check for two-phase flow.
5. Ensure that line pressure or sample pressure meets installation requirements.
6. Increase back pressure to minimize bubble formation.
7. Minimize vibration in the pipeline.
8. Increase the pipe diameter.
9. Install a flow control method (bypass, flow chamber, expander, etc.).
10. Perform Smart Meter Verification.

15.10.2 Inaccurate density reading

Cause

- Problem with process fluid
- Incorrect density calibration factors
- Wiring problem
- Incorrect grounding
- Two-phase flow
- Plugged or coated sensor tube
- Incorrect sensor orientation

- RTD failure
- Physical characteristics of sensor have changed

Recommended actions

1. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.
2. Check the grounding of all components.
3. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
4. Ensure that all of the calibration parameters have been entered correctly. See the sensor tag or the calibration sheet for your meter.
5. Check for two-phase flow.
6. If two sensors with similar frequency are too near each other, separate them.
7. Purge the sensor tubes.
8. Perform Smart Meter Verification.

15.10.3 Unusually high density reading

Cause

- Plugged or coated sensor tube
- Incorrect density calibration factors
- Inaccurate temperature measurement
- RTD failure
- In high-frequency meters, erosion, or corrosion
- In low-frequency meters, tube fouling

Recommended actions

1. Ensure that all of the calibration parameters have been entered correctly.

   See the sensor tag or the calibration sheet for your meter.
2. Purge the sensor tubes.
3. Check for coating in the flow tubes.
4. Perform Smart Meter Verification.

15.10.4 Unusually low density reading

Cause

- Two-phase flow
- Incorrect calibration factors
- In low-frequency meters, erosion or corrosion

Recommended actions

1. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
2. Verify all of the characterization or calibration parameters. See the sensor tag or the calibration sheet for your meter.
3. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.
4. Check for tube erosion, especially if the process fluid is abrasive.
5. Perform Smart Meter Verification.

15.11 Discrete Output troubleshooting

15.11.1 No Discrete Output

Cause

- Output not powered
- Wiring problem
- Circuit failure

Recommended actions

1. Check the power supply and power supply wiring.
2. Verify the output wiring.
3. Verify that the channel is wired and configured as a Discrete Output.
4. Contact customer service.

15.11.2 Loop test failed

Cause

- Output not powered
- Power supply problem
- Wiring problem
- Circuit failure

Recommended actions

1. Check the power supply and power supply wiring.
2. Verify the output wiring.
3. Contact customer service.

15.11.3 Discrete Output readings reversed

Cause

- Wiring problem
- Configuration does not match wiring

Recommended actions

1. Verify the output wiring.
2. Ensure that **Discrete Output Polarity** is set correctly.

15.12 Flow measurement troubleshooting

15.12.1 Flow rate reported as zero when flow is present

Cause

The process condition is below cutoff.

Recommended action

Verify the cutoffs.

15.12.2 Flow indication at no flow conditions or zero offset

Cause

- Misaligned piping (especially in new installations)
- Open or leaking valve
- Incorrect sensor zero

Recommended actions

1. Verify all of the characterization or calibration parameters.
   See the sensor tag or the calibration sheet for your meter.
2. If the reading is not excessively high, review the live zero. You may need to restore the factory zero.
3. Check for open or leaking valves or seals.
4. Check for mounting stress on the sensor (e.g., sensor being used to support piping, misaligned piping).
5. Contact customer service.

15.12.3 Erratic non-zero flow rate at no-flow conditions

Cause

- Leaking valve or seal
- Two-phase flow
- Plugged or coated sensor tube
- Incorrect sensor orientation
- Wiring problem
- Vibration in pipeline at rate close to sensor tube frequency
- Damping value too low
- Mounting stress on sensor

Recommended actions

1. Verify that the sensor orientation is appropriate for your application.
   See the installation manual for your sensor.
2. Check the drive gain and the pickoff voltage.
3. If the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter includes either a 4-wire or a 9-wire segment, verify that all the cable shields are correctly grounded.
4. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.
5. For sensors with a junction box, check for moisture in the junction box.
6. Purge the sensor tubes.
7. Check for open or leaking valves or seals.
8. Check for sources of vibration.
9. Verify damping configuration.
10. Verify that the measurement units are configured correctly for your application.

11. Check for two-phase flow.
12. Check for radio frequency interference.
13. Contact customer service.

15.12.4 Erratic non-zero flow rate when flow is steady

Cause

- Two-phase flow
- Damping value too low
- Plugged or coated sensor tube
- Wiring problem
- Problem with receiving device

Recommended actions

1. Verify that the sensor orientation is appropriate for your application.
   See the installation manual for your sensor.
2. Check the drive gain and the pickoff voltage.
3. If the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter includes either a 4-wire or a 9-wire segment, verify that all the cable shields are correctly grounded.
4. Check for air entrainment, tube fouling, flashing, or tube damage.
5. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.
6. For sensors with a junction box, check for moisture in the junction box.
7. Purge the sensor tubes.
8. Check for open or leaking valves or seals.
9. Check for sources of vibration.
10. Verify damping configuration.
11. Verify that the measurement units are configured correctly for your application.
12. Check for two-phase flow.
13. Check for radio frequency interference.
14. Contact customer service.

15.12.5 Inaccurate flow rate

Cause

- Wiring problem
- Inappropriate measurement unit
- Incorrect flow calibration factor
- Incorrect meter factor
- Incorrect density calibration factors
- Incorrect grounding
- Two-phase flow
- Problem with receiving device
- Incorrect sensor zero

Recommended actions

1. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.
2. Verify that the measurement units are configured correctly for your application.
3. Verify all of the characterization or calibration parameters. See the sensor tag or the calibration sheet for your meter.
4. Zero the meter.
5. Check the grounding of all components.
6. Check for two-phase flow.
7. Verify the receiving device, and the wiring between the transmitter and the receiving device.
8. Check the sensor coils for electrical shorts. If you find problems, replace the sensor.
9. Replace the core processor or transmitter.

15.13 Frequency Output troubleshooting

15.13.1 No FO

Cause

- Stopped totalizer
- Process condition below cutoff
- Fault condition if **Fault Action** is set to Internal Zero or Downscale
- Two-phase flow
- Flow in reverse direction from configured flow direction parameter
- **Frequency Output Direction** not set correctly
- Bad frequency receiving device
- Output level not compatible with receiving device
- Bad output circuit
- Output not powered
- Wiring problem
- Channel not configured for desired output

Recommended actions

1. Verify that the process conditions are below the low-flow cutoff. Reconfigure the low-flow cutoff if necessary.
2. Check the **Fault Action** settings.
3. Verify that the totalizers are not stopped. A stopped totalizer will cause the Frequency Output to be locked.
4. Check for two-phase flow.
5. Check flow direction.
6. Check the direction parameters.
7. Verify the receiving device, and the wiring between the transmitter and the receiving device.
8. Verify that the channel is wired and configured as a Frequency Output.
9. Perform a loop test.

15.13.2 Consistently incorrect FO measurement

Cause

- Output not scaled correctly
- Incorrect measurement unit configured for process variable

Recommended actions

1. Check the scaling of the Frequency Output.
2. Verify that the measurement units are configured correctly for your application.

15.13.3 Erratic FO

Cause

There is Radio Frequency Interference (RFI) from the environment.

Recommended action

Check for radio frequency interference.

15.13.4 FO goes in and out of fault conditions

Cause

There is a problem with the interaction between the Output Saturated alert and the fault action configured for the output.

Recommended actions

1. Change the severity of the Output Saturated alert from Fault to another option.
2. Configure the transmitter to ignore the Output Saturated alert or the relevant conditions.
3. Change the configuration of **Fault Action** from Downscale to another option.

15.14 mA Output troubleshooting

15.14.1 No mAO

Cause

- Output not powered
- Power supply problem
- Wiring problem
- Circuit failure

Recommended actions

1. If applicable, check the output wiring to verify that the output is powered.
2. Check the power supply and power supply wiring.
3. Verify the output wiring.
4. Check the **Fault Action** settings.
5. Verify channel configuration for the affected mA Output.
6. Measure DC voltage across output terminals to verify that the output is active.

7. Contact customer service.

15.14.2 Loop test failed

Cause

- Output not powered
- Power supply problem
- Wiring problem
- Circuit failure

Recommended actions

1. Check the power supply and power supply wiring.
2. Verify the output wiring.
3. Check the **Fault Action** settings.
4. Verify channel configuration for the affected mA Output.
5. Contact customer service.

15.14.3 mAO below 4 mA

Cause

- Output not powered
- Open in wiring
- Bad output circuit
- Process condition below LRV
- LRV and URV are not set correctly
- Fault condition if **Fault Action** is set to Internal Zero or Downscale
- Bad mA receiving device

Recommended actions

1. Check your process conditions against the values reported by the device.
2. Verify the receiving device, and the wiring between the transmitter and the receiving device.
3. Check the settings of **Upper Range Value** and **Lower Range Value**.
4. Check the **Fault Action** settings.
5. Verify channel configuration for the affected mA Output.

15.14.4 Constant mAO

Cause

- Incorrect process variable assigned to the output
- Fault condition exists
- Non-zero HART address (mA Output 1)
- A loop test is in progress
- Zero calibration failure

- mA Output Direction not set correctly

Recommended actions

1. Verify the output variable assignments.
2. View and resolve any existing alert conditions.
3. Check the direction parameters.
4. Check the HART address and **mA Output Action** (**Loop Current Mode**).
5. Check to see if a loop test is in process (the output is fixed).
6. Check HART burst mode configuration.
7. If related to a zero calibration failure, reboot or power-cycle the transmitter and retry the zeroing procedure.

15.14.5 mAO consistently out of range

Cause

- Incorrect process variable or units assigned to output
- Fault condition if **Fault Action** is set to Upscale or Downscale
- LRV and URV are not set correctly

Recommended actions

1. Verify the output variable assignments.
2. Verify the measurement units configured for the output.
3. Check the **Fault Action** settings.
4. Check the settings of **Upper Range Value** and **Lower Range Value**.
5. Check the mA Output trim.

15.14.6 Consistently incorrect mA measurement

Cause

- Loop problem
- Output not trimmed correctly
- Incorrect measurement unit configured for process variable
- Incorrect process variable configured
- LRV and URV are not set correctly
- mA Output Direction not set correctly

Recommended actions

1. Check the mA Output trim.
2. Verify the measurement units configured for the output.
3. Verify the process variable assigned to the mA Output.
4. Check the direction parameters.
5. Check the settings of **Upper Range Value** and **Lower Range Value**.

15.14.7 mAO correct at lower current, but incorrect at higher current

Cause

The mA loop resistance may be set too high.

Recommended actions

Verify that the mA Output load resistance is below the maximum supported load.

See the installation manual for your transmitter.

15.14.8 mAO goes in and out of fault conditions

Cause

There is a problem with the interaction between the Output Saturated alert and the fault action configured for the output.

Recommended actions

1. Change the severity of the Output Saturated alert from Fault to another option.
2. Configure the transmitter to ignore the Output Saturated alert or the relevant conditions.
3. Change the configuration of **Fault Action** from Downscale to another option.

15.15 Temperature measurement problems

15.15.1 Temperature reading significantly different from process temperature

Cause

- RTD failure
- Wiring problem
- Incorrect calibration factors
- Line temperature in bypass does not match temperature in main line

Recommended actions

1. For sensors with a junction box, check for moisture in the junction box.
2. Check the sensor coils for electrical shorts. If you find problems, replace the sensor.
3. Ensure that all of the calibration parameters have been entered correctly.
   See the sensor tag or the calibration sheet for your meter.
4. Refer to status alerts (especially RTD failure alerts).
5. Disable external temperature compensation.
6. Verify temperature calibration.
7. Check the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter.

15.15.2 Temperature reading slightly different from process temperature

Cause

- Sensor temperature not yet equalized
- Sensor leaking heat

Recommended actions

1. If the error is within the temperature specification for the sensor, there is no problem. If the temperature measurement is outside the specification, contact customer service.
2. The temperature of the fluid may be changing rapidly. Allow sufficient time for the sensor to equalize with the process fluid.
3. Install thermal installation, up to but not over, the transmitter housing.
4. Check the sensor coils for electrical shorts. If you find problems, replace the sensor.
5. The RTD may not be making good contact with the sensor. The sensor may need to be replaced.

15.15.3 Inaccurate temperature data from external device

Cause

- Wiring problem
- Problem with input configuration
- Problem with external device

Recommended actions

1. Verify the wiring between the transmitter and the external device.
2. Verify that the external device is operating correctly.
3. Verify the configuration of the temperature input.
4. Ensure that both devices are using the same measurement unit.

15.16 Check power supply wiring

If the power supply wiring is damaged or improperly connected, the transmitter may not receive enough power to operate properly.

Prerequisites

- You will need the installation manual for your transmitter.

Procedure

1. Use a voltmeter to test the voltage at the transmitter power supply terminals.
   - If the voltage is within the specified range, you do not have a power supply problem.
   - If the voltage is low, ensure that the power supply is adequate at the source, the power cable is sized correctly, there is no damage to the power cable, and an appropriate fuse is installed.
   - If there is no power, continue with this procedure.
2. **WARNING**
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, wait five minutes after disconnecting the power. Failure to do so could result in an explosion causing death or injury.

Before inspecting the power supply wiring, disconnect the power source.

3. Ensure that the terminals, wires, and wiring compartment are clean and dry.
4. Ensure that the power supply wires are connected to the correct terminals.
5. Ensure that the power supply wires are making good contact, and are not clamped to the wire insulation.
6. **WARNING**
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not reapply power to the transmitter with the housing cover removed. Reapplying power to the transmitter while the housing cover is removed could cause an explosion.

   Reapply power to the transmitter.
7. Test the voltage at the terminals.
   If there is no power, contact customer service.

15.17 Check sensor to transmitter wiring

A number of power-supply and output problems may occur if the wiring between the sensor and the transmitter is improperly connected, or if the wiring becomes damaged.

Be sure to check all wiring segments, especially the wiring between the transmitter and the sensor junction box for the 9-wire transmitter.

Prerequisites

You will need the installation manual for your transmitter.

Procedure

1. Before opening the wiring compartments, disconnect the power source.

   WARNING
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, wait five minutes after disconnecting the power. Failure to do so could result in an explosion causing death or injury.

2. Verify that the transmitter is connected to the sensor according to the information provided in your transmitter installation manual.
3. Verify that the wires are making good contact with the terminals.
4. Check the continuity of all wires from the transmitter to the sensor.

15.18 Check grounding

A sensor and the transmitter must be grounded. If the core processor is installed as part of the transmitter or the sensor, it is grounded automatically. If the core processor is installed separately, it must be grounded separately.

Prerequisites

You will need an:

- Installation manual for your sensor
- Installation manual for your transmitter (remote-mount installations only)

Procedure

Refer to the sensor and transmitter installation manuals for grounding requirements and instructions.

15.19 Perform loop tests

A loop test is a way to verify that the transmitter and the remote device are communicating properly. A loop test also helps you know whether you need to trim mA Outputs.

Prerequisites

Follow appropriate procedures to ensure that loop testing will not interfere with existing measurement and control loops.

15.19.1 Perform loop tests using the display

Procedure

1. Test the mA Output(s).
    a) Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Output Simulation** and select the mA Output to test.
    b) Set **Simulation Value** to `4`.
    c) Start the simulation.
    d) Read the mA current at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.

       The readings do not need to match exactly. If the values are slightly different, you can correct the discrepancy by trimming the output.
    e) Choose **New Value**.
    f) Set **Simulation Value** to `20`.
    g) Start the simulation.
    h) Read the mA current at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.

       The readings do not need to match exactly. If the values are slightly different, you can correct the discrepancy by trimming the output.
    i) Choose **Exit**.
2. Test the Frequency Output(s).
    a) Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Output Simulation** and select the frequency output to test.
    b) Set **Simulation Value** to `1`.
    c) Start the simulation.
    d) Read the frequency signal at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.
    e) Choose **New Value**.
    f) Set **Simulation Value** to `1450`.
    g) Start the simulation.
    h) Read the frequency signal at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.
    i) Choose **Exit**.
3. Test the Discrete Output(s).
    a) Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **Output Simulation** and select the discrete output to test.
    b) Set **Simulation Value** to ON.

c) Start the simulation.

d) Verify the signal at the receiving device.

e) Choose **New Value**.

f) Set **Simulation Value** to OFF.

g) Start the simulation.

h) Verify the signal at the receiving device.

i) Choose **Exit**.

Postrequisites

- If the mA Output readings are within 20 microamps of the expected values, you can correct this discrepancy by trimming the output.
- If the discrepancy between the mA Output readings is greater than 20 microamps, or if at any step the reading was faulty, verify the wiring between the transmitter and the remote device, and try again.
- If the Discrete Output readings are reversed, check the setting of **Discrete Output Polarity**.
- If the Discrete Input readings are reversed, check the setting of **Discrete Input Polarity**.

15.19.2 Perform loop tests using ProLink III

Procedure

1. Test the mA Output(s).
   a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Diagnostics** → **Testing** and select the mA output to test.
   b) Enter `4` in **Fix to:**.
   c) Select **Fix mA**.
   d) Read the mA current at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.

      The readings do not need to match exactly. If the values are slightly different, you can correct the discrepancy by trimming the output.
   e) Select **UnFix mA**.
   f) Enter `20` in **Fix to:**.
   g) Select **Fix mA**.
   h) Read the mA current at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.

      The readings do not need to match exactly. If the values are slightly different, you can correct the discrepancy by trimming the output.
   i) Select **UnFix mA**.
2. Test the Frequency Output(s).
   a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Diagnostics** → **Testing** and select the frequency output to test.
   b) Enter the Frequency Output value in **Fix to**.
   c) Select **Fix FO**.
   d) Read the frequency signal at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.

    e) Select **UnFix FO**.

3. Test the Discrete Output(s).
    a) Choose **Device Tools** → **Diagnostics** → **Testing** → **Discrete Output Test**.
    b) Set **Fix to:** to ON.
    c) Verify the signal at the receiving device.
    d) Set **Fix to:** to OFF.
    e) Verify the signal at the receiving device.
    f) Select **UnFix**.
4. Test the Discrete Input.
    a) Set the remote input device to ON.
    b) Choose **Device Tools** → **Diagnostics** → **Testing** → **Discrete Input Test**.
    c) Verify the signal at the transmitter.
    d) Set the remote input device to OFF.
    e) Verify the signal at the transmitter.

Postrequisites

- If the mA Output readings are within 20 microamps of the expected values, you can correct this discrepancy by trimming the output.
- If the discrepancy between the mA Output readings is greater than 20 microamps, or if at any step the reading was faulty, verify the wiring between the transmitter and the remote device, and try again.
- If the Discrete Output readings are reversed, check the setting of **Discrete Output Polarity**.
- If the Discrete Input readings are reversed, check the setting of **Discrete Input Polarity**.

15.19.3 Perform loop tests using a field communicator

Procedure

1. Test the mA Output(s).
    a) Choose **Service Tools** → **Simulate** → **Simulate Outputs** and select the mA output to test.
    b) Select **4 mA**.
    c) Read the mA current at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.

       The readings do not need to match exactly. If the values are slightly different, you can correct the discrepancy by trimming the output.
    d) Press **OK**.
    e) Select **20 mA**.
    f) Read the mA current at the receiving device and compare it to the transmitter output.

       The readings do not need to match exactly. If the values are slightly different, you can correct the discrepancy by trimming the output.
    g) Press **OK**.
    h) Choose **End**.

2. Test the Frequency Output(s).
    a) Choose **Service Tools** → **Simulate** → **Simulate Outputs** and select the Frequency Output to test.
    b) Select the Frequency Output level.
    c) Press **OK**.
    d) Choose **End**.
3. Test the Discrete Output(s).
    a) Choose **Service Tools** → **Simulate** → **Simulate Outputs** and select the Discrete Output to test.
    b) Choose **Off**.
    c) Verify the signal at the receiving device.
    d) Press **OK**.
    e) Choose **On**.
    f) Verify the signal at the receiving device.
    g) Press **OK**.
    h) Choose **End**.
4. Test the Discrete Input.
    a) Set the remote input device to ON.
    b) Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **Inputs/Outputs** and read the state of the Discrete Input.
        - Channel B = Discrete Input 1
    c) Set the remote input device to OFF.
    d) Choose **Service Tools** → **Variables** → **Inputs/Outputs** and read the state of the Discrete Input.
    e) Return the remote input device to normal operation.

Postrequisites

- If the mA Output readings are within 20 microamps of the expected values, you can correct this discrepancy by trimming the output.
- If the discrepancy between the mA Output readings is greater than 20 microamps, or if at any step the reading was faulty, verify the wiring between the transmitter and the remote device, and try again.
- If the Discrete Output readings are reversed, check the setting of **Discrete Output Polarity**.
- If the Discrete Input readings are reversed, check the setting of **Discrete Input Polarity**.

15.20 Trim mA Output

Trimming an mA Output calibrates the transmitter mA Output to the receiving device. If the current trim value is inaccurate, the transmitter will under-compensate or over-compensate the output.

15.20.1 Trim an mA Output using the display

Trimming the mA Output establishes a common measurement range between the transmitter and the device that receives the mA Output.

Prerequisites

Ensure that the mA Output is wired to the receiving device that will be used in production.

Procedure

1. Choose **Menu** → **Service Tools** → **mA Output Trim** and select the output to trim.
2. Follow the instructions in the guided method.
3. Check the trim results. If any trim result is less than −20 microamps or greater than +20 microamps, contact customer service.

15.20.2 Trim mA Output using ProLink III

Trimming the mA Output establishes a common measurement range between the transmitter and the device that receives the mA Output.

Prerequisites

Ensure that the mA Output is wired to the receiving device that will be used in production.

Procedure

1. Follow the instructions in the guided method.
2. Check the trim results. If any trim result is less than −20 microamps or greater than +20 microamps, contact customer service.

15.20.3

Trimming the mA Output establishes a common measurement range between the transmitter and the device that receives the mA Output.

Prerequisites

Ensure that the mA Output is wired to the receiving device that will be used in production.

Procedure

1. Follow the instructions in the guided method.
2. Check the trim results. If any trim result is less than −20 microamps or greater than +20 microamps, contact customer service.

15.21 Using sensor simulation for troubleshooting

When sensor simulation is enabled, the transmitter reports user-specified values for basic process variables. This allows you to reproduce various process conditions or to test the system.

You can use sensor simulation to help distinguish between legitimate process noise and externally caused variation. For example, consider a receiving device that reports an unexpectedly erratic density value. If sensor simulation is enabled and the observed density value does not match the simulated value, the source of the problem is likely to be somewhere between the transmitter and the receiving device.

Sensor simulation requires an enhanced core and a communication device.

Important
When sensor simulation is active, the simulated value is used in all transmitter outputs and calculations, including totals and inventories, volume flow calculations, and concentration calculations. Disable all automatic functions related to the transmitter outputs and place the loop in manual operation. Do not enable simulation mode unless your application can tolerate these effects, and be sure to disable simulation mode when you have finished testing.

15.22 Check HART communications

If you cannot establish or maintain HART communications, or if the primary mA Output is producing a fixed value, you may have a wiring problem or a HART configuration problem.

Prerequisites

You may need one or more of the following:

- The installation manual for your transmitter
- A field communicator
- A voltmeter
- Optional: The *HART Application Guide*.

Procedure

1. Verify the HART address.

   Tip
   The default HART address is 0. This is the recommended value unless the device is in a multidrop network.

2. If the primary mA Output is producing a fixed value of 4 mA, ensure that **mA Output Action** (**Loop Current Mode**) is enabled.

   For all HART addresses except 0, **mA Output Action** must be enabled to allow the primary mA Output to report process data.

3. Refer to the wiring diagrams in the installation manual and verify that the primary mA Output is correctly wired for HART support.

15.23 Check Lower Range Value and Upper Range Value

If the process variable assigned to the mA Output falls below the configured **Lower Range Value** (LRV) or rises above the configured **Upper Range Value** (URV), the meter will post an Output Saturated alert for the affected output, then perform the configured fault action.

Procedure

1. Record your current process conditions.
2. Check the configuration of the LRV and URV.

15.24 Check mA Output Fault Action

The **mA Output Fault Action** controls the behavior of the mA Output if the transmitter encounters an internal fault condition. If the mA Output is reporting a constant value below 4 mA or above 20 mA, the transmitter may be in a fault condition.

Procedure

1. Check the status alerts for active fault conditions.
2. If there are no active fault conditions, continue troubleshooting.

15.25 Check the scaling of the Frequency Output

If the process variable assigned to the Frequency Output goes to a value that would set the Frequency Output to a signal below 0 Hz or above 12,500 Hz, the meter will post an Output Saturated alert for the affected output, then perform the configured fault action.

Procedure

1. Record your current process conditions.
2. Adjust the scaling of the Frequency Output.

15.26 Check Frequency Output Fault Action

The **Frequency Output Fault Action** controls the behavior of the Frequency Output if the transmitter encounters an internal fault condition. If the Frequency Output is reporting a constant value, the transmitter may be in a fault condition.

Procedure

1. Check the status alerts for active fault conditions.
2. If there are no active fault conditions, continue troubleshooting.

15.27 Check the direction parameters

If the direction parameters are set incorrectly, flow rate may be reported as reverse when it is actually forward, or vice versa. Totalizers and inventories may increment when they should decrement, or vice versa.

The reported flow rate and flow totals depend on the interaction of four factors: the flow direction arrow on the sensor, actual flow direction, the **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** parameter, the **Direction** parameter for the mA output or the frequency output, and the **Totalizer Direction** parameter.

Procedure

1. Ensure that **Sensor Flow Direction Arrow** is set correctly for your sensor installation and your process.
2. Verify the configuration of **mA Output Direction**, **Frequency Output Direction**, and **Totalizer Direction**.

15.28 Check the cutoffs

If the transmitter cutoffs are configured incorrectly, the transmitter may report zero flow when flow is present, or very small amounts of flow under no-flow conditions.

Procedure

Verify the configuration of all cutoffs.

15.29 Check for two-phase flow (slug flow)

Two-phase flow can cause rapid changes in the drive gain. This can cause a variety of measurement issues.

Procedure

1. Check for two-phase flow alerts (e.g., A105).
   If the transmitter is not generating two-phase flow alerts, verify that two-phase flow limits have been set. If limits are set, two-phase flow is not the source of your problem.
2. Check the process for cavitation, flashing, or leaks.
3. Monitor the density of your process fluid output under normal process conditions.
4. Check the settings of **Two-Phase Flow Low Limit**, **Two-Phase Flow High Limit**, and **Two-Phase Flow Timeout**.

   Tip
   You can reduce the occurrence of two-phase flow alerts by setting **Two-Phase Flow Low Limit** to a lower value, **Two-Phase Flow High Limit** to a higher value, or **Two-Phase Flow Timeout** to a higher value.

15.30 Check for radio frequency interference (RFI)

The transmitter Frequency Output or Discrete Output can be affected by radio frequency interference (RFI). Possible sources of RFI include a source of radio emissions, or a large transformer, pump, or motor that can generate a strong electromagnetic field. Several methods to reduce RFI are available. Use one or more of the following suggestions, as appropriate to your installation.

Procedure

- Use shielded cable between the output and the receiving device.
  - Terminate the shielding at the receiving device. If this is impossible, terminate the shielding at the cable gland or conduit fitting.
  - Do not terminate the shielding inside the wiring compartment.
  - 360-degree termination of shielding is unnecessary.
- Eliminate the RFI source.
- Move the transmitter.

15.31 Check HART® burst mode

HART burst mode is normally disabled, and should be enabled only if a HART Triloop is being used.

Procedure

1. Check to see if burst mode is enabled or disabled.
2. If burst mode is enabled, disable it.

15.32 Check the drive gain

Excessive or erratic drive gain may indicate any of a variety of process conditions or sensor problems.

To know whether your drive gain is excessive or erratic, you must collect drive gain data during the problem condition and compare it to drive gain data from a period of normal operation.

Excessive (saturated) drive gain

Table 15-2: Possible causes and recommended actions for excessive (saturated) drive gain

Possible cause	Recommended actions
Bent sensor tube	Check the pickoff voltages (see Check the pickoff voltage). If either of them are close to zero (but neither is zero), the sensor tubes may be bent. The sensor will need to be replaced.
Cracked sensor tube	Replace the sensor.
Flow rate out of range	Ensure that the flow rate is within sensor limits.
Open drive or pickoff sensor coil	Contact customer support.
Over-pressurized tubes	Contact customer support.
Plugged sensor tube	Check the pickoff voltages (see Check the pickoff voltage). If either of them are close to zero (but neither is zero), plugged tubes may be the source of your problem. Purge the tubes. In extreme cases, you may need to replace the sensor.
Sensor case full of process fluid	Replace the sensor.
Sensor imbalance	Contact customer support.
Sensor tubes not completely full	Correct process conditions so that the sensor tubes are full.
Two-phase flow	Check for two-phase flow. See Check for two-phase flow (slug flow).
Vibrating element not free to vibrate	Ensure that the vibrating element is free to vibrate.

Erratic drive gain

Table 15-3: Possible causes and recommended actions for erratic drive gain

Possible cause	Recommended actions
Foreign material caught in sensor tubes	• Purge the sensor tubes. • Replace the sensor.

15.33 Checking process variables

Micro Motion suggests that you make a record of the process variables listed below, under normal operating conditions. This list will help you recognize when the process variables are usually high or low.

- Flow rate
- Density
- Temperature
- Tube frequency
- Pickoff voltage
- Drive gain

For troubleshooting, check the process variables under both normal flow and tubes-full no-flow conditions. Except for flow rate, you should see little or no change between flow and no-flow conditions. If you see a significant difference, record the values and contact customer service for assistance.

Unusual values for process variables may indicate a variety of different problems. The following table lists several possible problems and suggested remedies.

Table 15-4: Process variables problems and remedies

Symptom	Cause	Suggested remedy
Steady non-zero flow rate under no-flow conditions	Misaligned piping (especially in new installations)	Correct the piping.
	Open or leaking valve	Check or correct the valve mechanism.
	Bad sensor zero	Rezero the flow meter. See Zero the meter.
Erratic non-zero flow rate under no-flow conditions	Leaking valve or seal	Check pipeline
	Slug flow	See Check for two-phase flow (slug flow).
	Plugged flow tube	Check drive gain and tube frequency. Purge the flow tubes.
	Incorrect sensor orientation	Sensor orientation must be appropriate to the process fluid. See the installation manual for your sensor.
	Wiring problem	Check the sensor circuitry. See Check for internal electrical problems.
	Vibration in pipeline at rate close to sensor tube frequency	Check the environment and remove the source of the vibration.
	Damping value too low	Check the configuration. See the appropriate section: • Configure Flow Damping • Configure Density Damping • Configure Temperature Damping
	Mounting stress on sensor	Check the sensor mounting to ensure: • Sensor is not being used to support the pipe • Sensor is not being used to correct pipe misalignment • Sensor is not too heavy for pipe
	Sensor cross-talk	Check the environment for sensor with a similiar (±0.5 Hz) tube frequency.
Erratic non-zero flow rate when flow is steady	Slug flow	See Check for two-phase flow (slug flow).
	Damping value too low	Check the configuration. See Characterize the meter (if required).
	Plugged flow tube	• Check drive gain and tube frequency. • Purge the flow tubes.
	Excessive or erratic drive gain	See Check the drive gain.
	Output wiring problem	Verify wiring between transmitter and receiving device. See the installation manual for your transmitter.
	Problem with receiving device	Test with another receiving device.
	Wiring problem	Check the sensor circuitry. See Check for internal electrical problems.

Table 15-4: Process variables problems and remedies *(continued)*

Symptom	Cause	Suggested remedy
Inaccurate flow rate or batch rate	Bad flow calibration factor	Verify characterization. See Characterize the meter (if required).
	Inappropriate measurement unit	Check calibration.
	Bad sensor zero	Resize the flow meter. See Zero the meter.
	Bad density calibration factors	Verify characterization. See Characterize the meter (if required).
	Bad flow meter grounding	See Check grounding.
	Slug flow	See Check for two-phase flow (slug flow).
	Problem with receiving device	Test with another receiving device.
	Wiring problem	Check the sensor circuitry. See Check for internal electrical problems.
Inaccurate density reading	Problem with process fluid	Use standard procedures to check the quality of the process fluid.
	Bad density calibration factors	Verify characterization. See Characterize the meter (if required).
	Wiring problem	Check the sensor circuitry. See Check for internal electrical problems.
	Bad flow meter grounding	Check the sensor circuitry. See Check grounding.
	Slug flow	Check the environment for sensor with a similar (±0.5 Hz) tube frequency.
	Sensor cross-talk	Check the sensor circuitry. See Check for internal electrical problems.
	Plugged flow tube	Check drive gain and tube frequency. Purge the flow tubes.
	Incorrect sensor orientation	Sensor orientation must be appropriate to process fluid. See the installation manual for your sensor.
	RTD failure	Check for alarm conditions and follow the troubleshooting procedure for the indicated alarm.
	Physical characteristics of the sensor have changed	Check for corrosion, erosion, or tube damage.
Temperature reading significantly different from process temperature	RTD failure	Check for alarm conditions and follow troubleshooting procedure for indicated alarm.
Temperature reading slightly different from process temperature	Sensor leaking heat	Insulate the sensor.
Unusually high density reading	Plugged flow tube	Check drive gain and tube frequency. Purge the flow tubes.
	Incorrect K2 value	Verify characterization. See Characterize the meter (if required).

Table 15-4: Process variables problems and remedies *(continued)*

Symptom	Cause	Suggested remedy
Unusually low density reading	Slug flow	Use standard procedures to check the quality of the process fluid.
	Incorrect K2 value	Verify characterization. See Characterize the meter (if required).
Unusually high tube frequency	Sensor erosion	Contact customer service.
Unusually low pickoff voltages	Plugged fow tube, corrosion, or erosion	Purge the flow tubes.
Unusually low pickoff voltages	Several possible causes	See Check the pickoff voltage.
Unusually high drive gain	Several possible causes	See Check the drive gain.

15.34 Check the pickoff voltage

If the pickoff voltage readings are unusually low, you may have any of a variety of process or equipment problems.

To know whether your pickoff voltage is unusually low, you must collect pickoff voltage data during the problem condition and compare it to pickoff voltage data from a period of normal operation.

Drive gain and pickoff voltage are inversely proportional. As drive gain increases, pickoff voltages decrease and vice versa.

Table 15-5: Possible causes and recommended actions for low pickoff voltage

Possible cause	Recommended actions
Faulty wiring runs between the sensor and transmitter	Verify wiring between sensor and transmitter.
Process flow rate beyond the limits of the sensor	Verify that the process flow rate is not out of range of the sensor.
Sensor tubes are not vibrating	• Check for plugging or deposition. • Ensure that the vibrating element is free to vibrate (no mechanical binding). • Verify wiring.
Moisture in the sensor electronics	Eliminate the moisture in the sensor electronics.
The sensor is damaged, or sensor magnets may have become demagnetized	Replace the sensor.

15.35 Check for internal electrical problems

Shorts between sensor terminals or between the sensor terminals and the sensor case can cause the sensor to stop working.

Possible cause	Recommended action
Moisture inside the sensor junction box	Ensure that the junction box is dry and no corrosion is present.
Liquid or moisture inside the sensor case	Contact customer support.
Internally shorted feedthrough	Contact customer support.
Faulty cable	Replace the cable.

Possible cause	Recommended action
Improper wire termination	Verify wire terminations inside the sensor junction box. See Micro Motion 9-Wire Flowmeter Cable Preparation and Installation Manual .
Shorts to the housing created by trapped or damaged wires	Contact customer support.
Loose wires or connectors	Contact customer support.
Liquid or moisture inside the housing	Contact customer support.

15.35.1 Check the sensor coils

Checking the sensor coils can identify a cause for a no sensor response alert.

Procedure

1. Disconnect power to the transmitter.

   WARNING
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, wait five minutes after disconnecting the power. Failure to do so could result in an explosion causing death or injury.

2. Unplug the terminal blocks from the terminal board on the core processor.
3. Remove the wires from the sensor junction box.
4. Using a digital multimeter (DMM), check the pickoff coils by placing the DMM leads on the unplugged terminal blocks for each terminal pair. See Table 15-6 for a list of the coils. Record the values.

   Table 15-6: Coils and test terminal pairs

Coil	Sensor model	Terminal colors
Drive coil	All	Brown to red
Left pickoff coil (LPO)	All	Green to white
Right pickoff coil (RPO)	All	Blue to gray
Resistance temperature detector (RTD)	All	Yellow to violet
Lead length compensator (LLC)	All except T-Series and CMF400 (see note)	Yellow to orange
Composite RTD	CMFS025-150 and T-Series	Yellow to orange
Fixed resistor (see note)	CMFS007, CMFS010, CMFS015, CMF400, and F300	Yellow to orange

   Note
   The CMF400 fixed resistor applies only to certain specific CMF400 releases. Contact customer support for more information.

   There should be no open circuits, that is, no infinite resistance readings. The left pickoff and right pickoff readings should be the same or very close (±5 Ω). If there are any unusual readings, repeat the coil resistance tests at the sensor junction box to eliminate the possibility of faulty cable. The readings for each coil pair should match at both ends.

5. Test the terminals in the sensor junction box for shorts to case.
   a) Leave the terminal blocks disconnected.

b) Remove the lid of the junction box.

c) Testing one terminal at a time, place a DMM lead on the terminal and the other lead on the sensor case.

   With the DMM set to its highest range, there should be infinite resistance on each lead. If there is any resistance at all, there is a short to case.

6. Test the resistance of junction box terminal pairs.
   a) Test the brown terminal against all other terminals except the red one.
   b) Test the red terminal against all other terminals except the brown one.
   c) Test the green terminal against all other terminals except the white one.
   d) Test the white terminal against all other terminals except the green one.
   e) Test the blue terminal against all other terminals except the gray one.
   f) Test the gray terminal against all other terminals except the blue one.
   g) Test the orange terminal against all other terminals except the yellow and violet ones.
   h) Test the yellow terminal against all other terminals except the orange and violet ones.
   i) Test the violet terminal against all other terminals except the yellow and orange ones.

   There should be infinite resistance for each pair. If there is any resistance at all, there is a short between terminals.

Postrequisites

To return to normal operation:

1. Replace the lid on the sensor junction box.

Important
When reassembling the meter components, be sure to grease all O-rings.

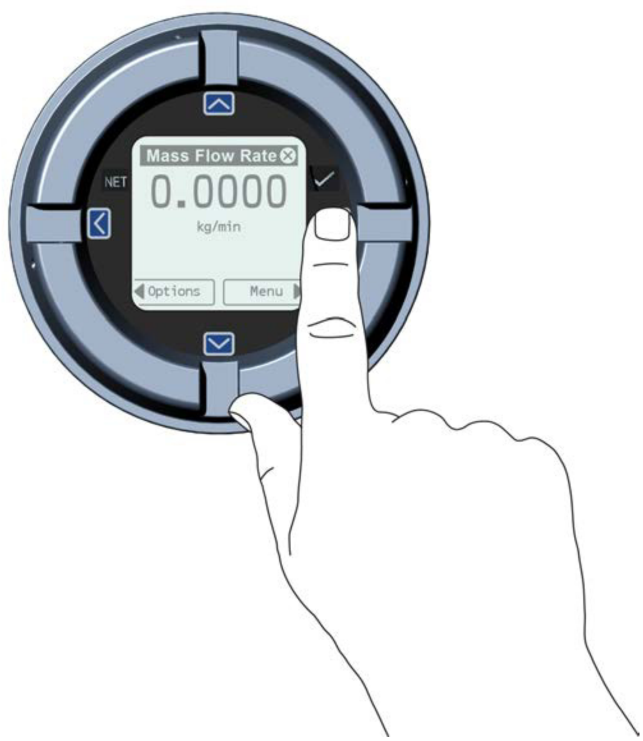
A Using the transmitter display

This section explains how to use the display. Using the display, you can move through the menus, configure the application, monitor and control the application, and perform maintenance and diagnostic tasks.

A.1 Components of the transmitter display

The transmitter display includes a multi-line LCD panel.

Figure A-1: 4700 transmitter display



LCD panel

In normal operation, the LCD panel shows the current value of the display variables, and their measurement units.

Figure A-2: 4700 transmitter LCD panel

The LCD panel also provides access to the display menus and alert information. From the display menus, you can:

- View the current configuration and make configuration changes.
- Perform procedures such as loop testing and zero verification.

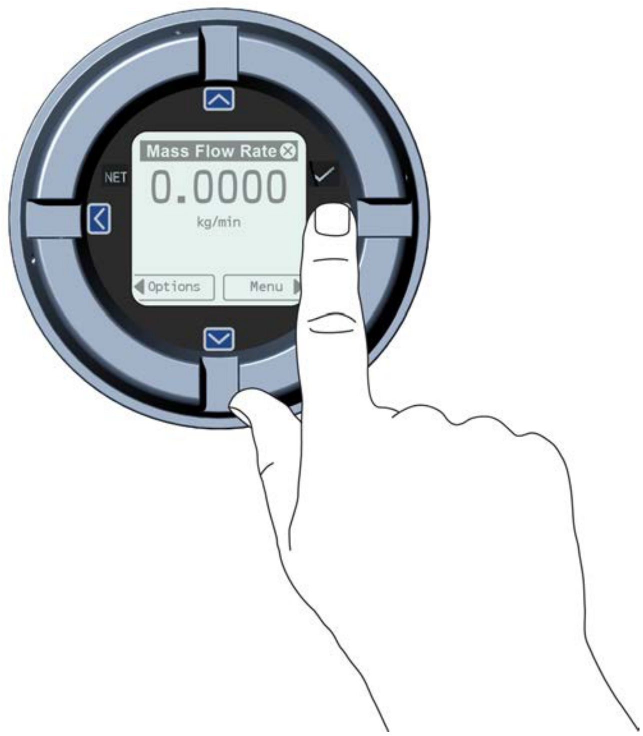
The alert information allows you to see which alerts are active, acknowledge the alerts individually or as a group, and to see more detailed information for individual alerts.

A.2 Access and use the display menu

The display menus allow you to perform most configuration, administration, and maintenance tasks.

The four capacitive buttons, ⇦⇧⇩⇨, are used to navigate the menus, make selections, and enter data.

Figure A-3: Capacitive buttons



Procedure

1. Observe the action bar at the bottom of the LCD panel.

   The action bar displays **Menu⇨**.

2. Navigate the menus using the four capacitive buttons:
   - Activate ⇧ or ⇩ to scroll to the previous or next item in the menu.
   - Activate and hold ⇧ or ⇩ (approximately 1 second to scroll rapidly through numbers or menu options, or to move to the previous screen or next screen in a multi-screen display.
   - Activate ⇨ to drill down to a lower menu or to select an option.
   - Activate and hold ⇨ to save and apply your action.
   - Activate ⇦ to return to the previous menu.
   - Activate and hold ⇦ to cancel your action.

   The action bar is updated with context-sensitive information.

   If the menu or the topic is too large for a single display screen, the ⇩ and ⇧ symbols at the bottom and top of the LCD panel are used to indicate that you must scroll down or up to see more information.

Figure A-4: Navigation arrows

3. If you make a menu choice that leads to a possible configuration change, or to certain procedures such as zero calibration:
   - If display security is not enabled, the display prompts you to activate ⇦⇧⇩⇨, in that order. This feature protects against accidental changes to configuration, but does not provide any security.

Figure A-5: Security prompts

   - If display security is enabled, the display prompts you to enter the display passcode.

4. If you make a menu choice that requires entering a numeric value or character string, the display provides a screen similar to the following:

Figure A-6: Numeric values and character strings

   - Activate ⇦ or ⇨ to position the cursor.
   - Activate ⇧ and ⇩ to scroll through the values that are valid for that position.
   - Repeat until all characters are set.
   - Activate and hold ⇨ to save the value.

5. To exit the display menu system, use either of the following methods:
    - Wait until the menu times out and returns to the display variables.
    - Exit each menu separately, working your way back to the top of the menu system.

B Using ProLink III with the transmitter

B.1 Basic information about ProLink III

ProLink III is a configuration and service tool available from Micro Motion. ProLink III runs on a Windows platform and provides complete access to transmitter functions and data.

Version requirements

Use the latest version of ProLink III and the device firmware to support all features. For details about ProLink III device support, refer to the `ProLink III ChangeLog.txt` file.

ProLink III requirements

To install ProLink III, you must have:

- The ProLink III installation media
- The ProLink III installation kit for your connection type:
  — USB A-type to A-type cable or USB converter: Service port connection

To obtain ProLink III and the appropriate installation kit, contact customer support.

ProLink III documentation

Most of the instructions in this manual assume that you are already familiar with ProLink III or that you have a general familiarity with Windows programs. If you need more information than this manual provides, see the *Micro Motion ProLink III with ProcessViz Software User Manual*.

In most ProLink III installations, the manual is installed with the ProLink III program. Additionally, the ProLink III manual is available on the documentation CD or at Emerson.com.

ProLink III features and functions

ProLink III offers complete transmitter configuration and operation functions. ProLink III also offers a number of additional features and functions, including:

- A Professional version with expanded features not available on the Basic version
- The ability to save the transmitter configuration set to a file on the PC, and reload it or propagate it to other transmitters
- The ability to log specific types of data to a file on the PC
- The ability to view performance trends for various types of data on the PC
- The ability to connect to and view information for more than one device
- A guided connection wizard

These features are documented in the *Micro Motion ProLink III with ProcessViz Software User Manual*. ProLink III features are not documented in this manual.

ProLink III messages

As you use ProLink III with a Micro Motion transmitter, you will see a number of messages and notes. This manual does not document all of these messages and notes.

Important
The user is responsible for responding to messages and notes and complying with all safety messages.

B.2 Connect with ProLink III

A connection from ProLink III to your transmitter allows you to read process data, configure the transmitter, and perform maintenance and troubleshooting tasks.

B.2.1 Connection types supported by ProLink III

Depending on the channels that are licensed on your transmitter, you may have several connection types available to connect from ProLink III to the transmitter. Choose the connection type appropriate to your network and the tasks you intend to perform.

Table B-1: Connection types supported by ProLink III

Connection type	Port or channel	Terminals
Service port	USB A-type	N/A
HART®/Bell 202	Channel A (mA Output 1)	1 and 2
HART/RS-485	Channel C (RS-485)	5 and 6
Modbus/RS-485 8-bit (Modbus RTU)	Channel C (RS-485)	
Modbus/RTU 7-bit (Modbus ASCII)	Channel C (RS-485)	

When selecting a connection type, consider the following:

- Some connections require opening the wiring compartment. These connection types should be used only for temporary connections, and may require extra safety precautions.
- Service port connections use standard connection parameters and a standard address already defined in ProLink III.
- Channel C auto-detects incoming connection requests, and automatically responds to both HART and Modbus.
- HART/Bell 202 connections use standard HART connection parameters that are already defined in ProLink III.
- RS-485 connections and service port connections are typically faster than HART/Bell 202 connections.

B.2.2 Make a service port connection from ProLink III to the transmitter

WARNING
If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

Prerequisites

- Ensure the transmitter service port is enabled.
- Obtain a USB type A to type A cable.

Important
The USB cable should be no greater than 1 meter in length.

Procedure

1. Insert one end of the USB cable into the USB port on your PC.
2. Open the wiring compartment on the transmitter, and insert the other end of the USB cable into the service port on the transmitter.

Figure B-1: Service port inside transmitter wiring compartment

3. Start ProLink III.
4. Choose **Connect to Physical Device**.
5. Set parameters as shown here.

Parameter	Setting
Protocol	Service Port
PC Port	The number assigned to the USB port on your PC

6. Click **Connect**.

Need help?
If an error message appears:

- Ensure that you have specified the correct port on your PC.
- Ensure the transmitter service port is enabled at **Menu** → **Configuration** → **Security** → **Service Port**.

B.2.3 Make a Modbus/RS-485 connection from ProLink III to the transmitter

This connection type uses Modbus protocol and commands to communicate with the transmitter over an RS-485 network. You can make a Modbus/RS-485 connection to the transmitter RS-485 terminals (Channel C) or to any point on the network.

Prerequisites

- Channel C activated on the transmitter
- Installation kit
- An available serial port or USB port
- Adapters as required (for example, 9-pin to 25-pin)

Procedure

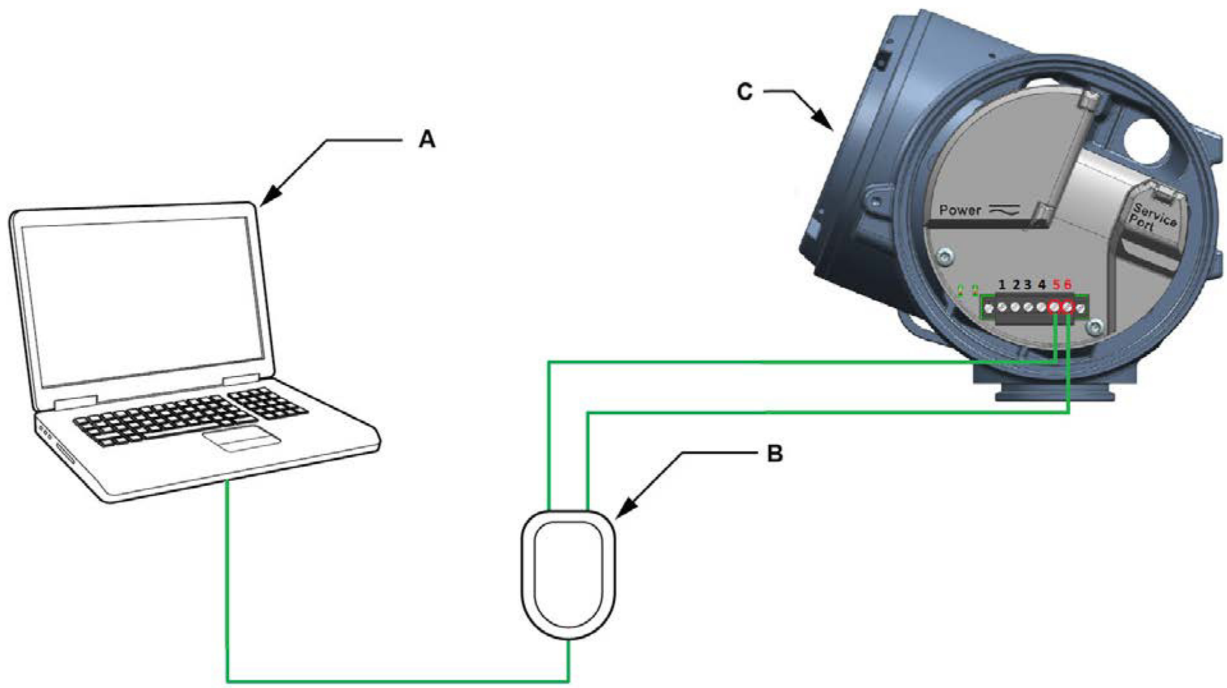
1. Attach the signal converter to the serial port or USB port on your PC.
2. To connect directly to the transmitter terminals:
    a) Open the transmitter wiring compartment.

    WARNING
    If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not open the wiring compartment while the transmitter is powered up. Opening the wiring compartment while the transmitter is powered up could cause an explosion. To connect to the transmitter in a hazardous environment, use a connection method that does not require opening the wiring compartment.

    b) Connect the leads from the signal converter to terminals 5 (RS-485/A) and 6 (RS-485/B).

    Tip
    Usually, but not always, the black lead is RS-485/A and the red lead is RS-485/B.

Figure B-2: Connection to RS-485 terminals



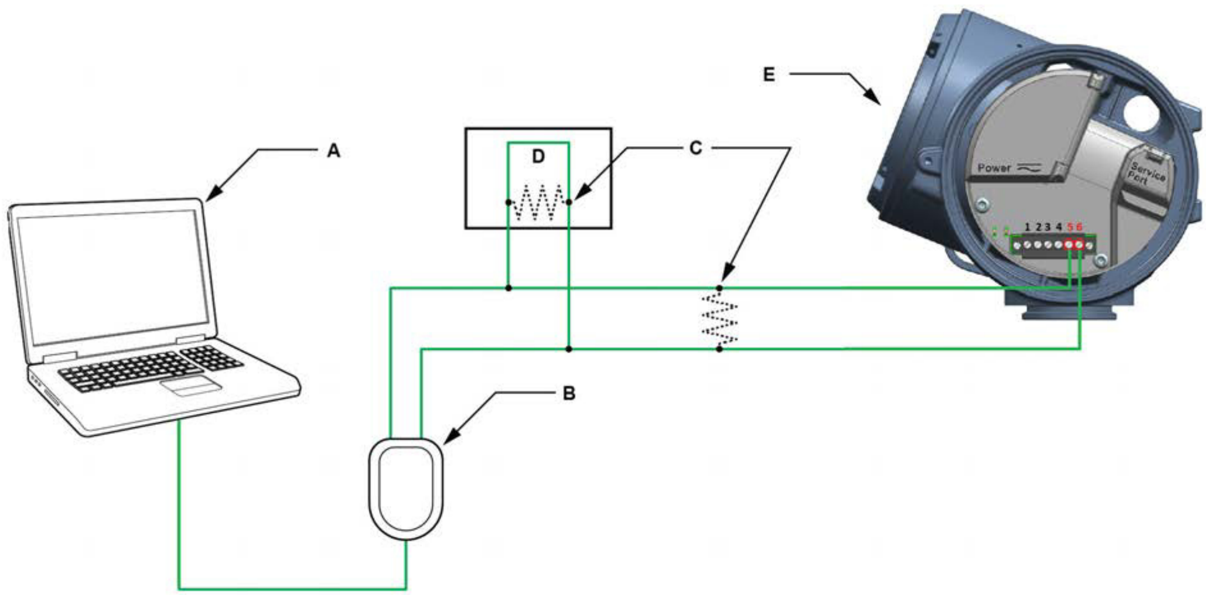
A. PC
B. RS-232 to RS-485 converter
C. Transmitter with end-cap removed

Note
This figure shows a serial port connection. USB connections are also supported.

3. To connect over the RS-485 network:
    a) Attach the leads from the signal converter to any point on the network.
    b) Add resistance as necessary to achieve at least one volt across the connection points.
    c) Ensure that the PLC or DCS is not trying to communicate to this meter at this time.

    Restriction
    The meter does not support concurrent connections from ProLink III and a PLC or DCS. If another host is already communicating with the meter, ProLink III will not be able to connect, but its connection attempts will corrupt messages from the other host. To make a ProLink III connection, you can temporarily stop host communications or you can disconnect the cable from the host or you can connect through the service port.

Figure B-3: Connection over network



A. PC
B. RS-232 to RS-485 converter
C. 120-Ω, ½-watt resistors at both ends of the segment, if necessary
D. DCS or PLC
E. Transmitter with end-cap removed

Note
This figure shows a serial port connection. USB connections are also supported.

4. Start ProLink III.
5. Choose **Connect to Physical Device**.
6. Set parameters as shown here.

Parameter	Setting
PC Port	The number assigned to the COM port or USB port on your PC
Address	The Modbus address configured for this transmitter. The default is 1.

The transmitter automatically detects all other communications settings.

7. Click **Connect**.

Need help?
If an error message appears:

- Switch the leads and try again.
- Verify the Modbus address of the transmitter.
- Ensure that you have specified the correct port on your PC.
- Check the wiring between the PC and the transmitter.

- For long-distance communication, or if noise from an external source interferes with the signal, install 120-Ω ½-W terminating resistors in parallel with the output at both ends of the communication segment.
- Ensure that there is no concurrent Modbus communication to the transmitter.

B.2.4 Make a HART®/RS-485 connection from ProLink III to the transmitter

This connection type uses HART protocol and commands to communicate with the transmitter over an RS-485 network. You can connect directly to the RS/485 terminals on your transmitter (Channel A) or to any point on the network.

Prerequisites

- Channel A activated on the transmitter
- Installation kit
- An available serial port or USB port
- Adapters as required (for example, 9-pin to 25-pin)

Procedure

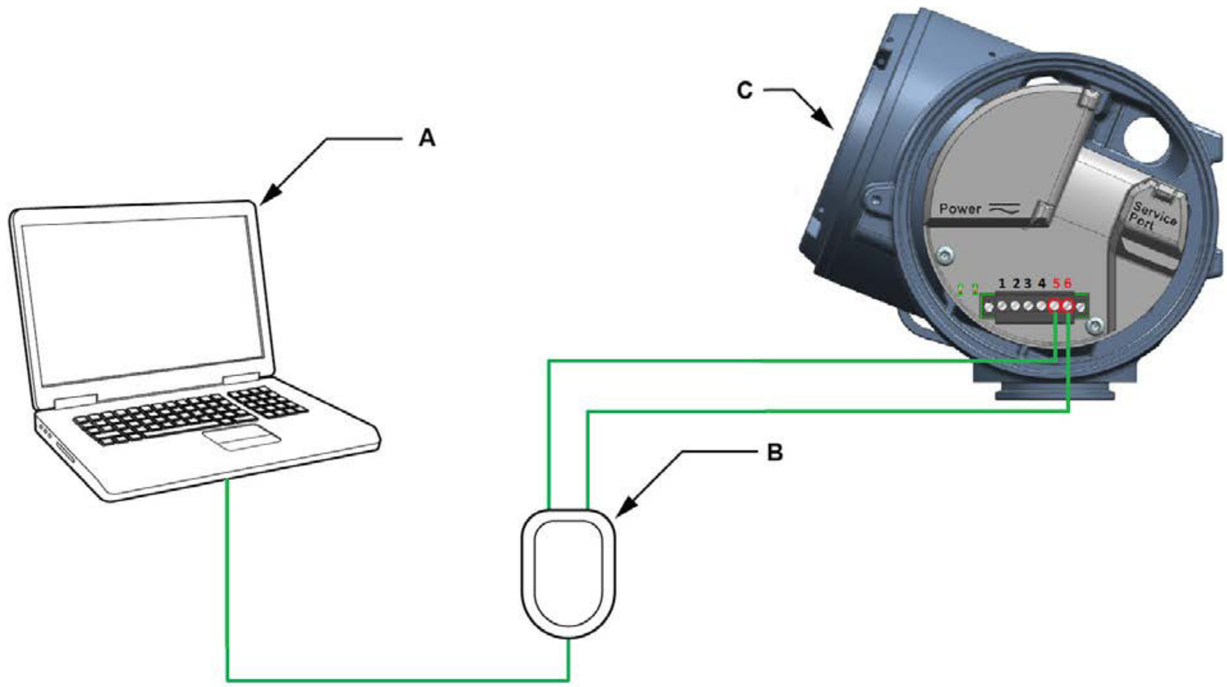
1. Attach the signal converter to the serial port or USB port on your PC.
2. To connect directly to the transmitter terminals:
   a) Open the transmitter wiring compartment.

      WARNING
      If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not open the wiring compartment while the transmitter is powered up. Opening the wiring compartment while the transmitter is powered up could cause an explosion. To connect to the transmitter in a hazardous environment, use a connection method that does not require opening the wiring compartment.

   b) Connect the leads from the signal converter to terminals 5 (RS-485/A) and 6 RS-485/B).

Tip
Usually, but not always, the black lead is RS-485/A and the red lead is RS-485/B.

Figure B-4: Connection to transmitter terminals

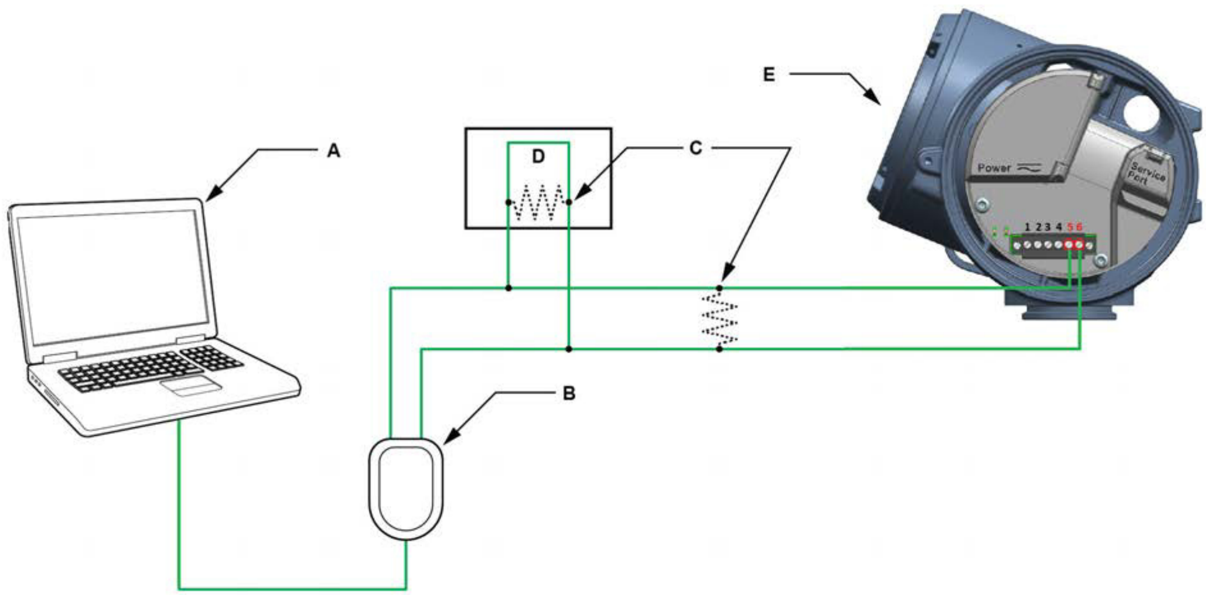


A. PC
B. Signal converter
C. Transmitter, with wiring compartment and power supply compartment opened

Note
This figure shows a serial port connection. USB connections are also supported.

3. To connect over the RS-485 network:
   a) Attach the leads from the signal converter to any point on the network.
   b) Add resistance as necessary to achieve at least one volt across the connection points.

Figure B-5: Connection over network



A. *PC*
B. *Signal converter*
C. *120-Ω, ½-watt resistors at both ends of the segment, if necessary*
D. *DCS or PLC*
E. *Transmitter, with wiring compartment and power supply compartment opened*

Note
This figure shows a serial port connection. USB connections are also supported.

4. Start ProLink III.
5. Choose **Connect to Physical Device**.
6. Set parameters as shown here.

Parameter	Setting
PC Port	The number assigned to the COM port or USB port on your PC
Address	The HART® address configured for this transmitter. The default is 0.
Parity	Odd

The transmitter automatically detects all other communications settings.

7. Set **Master** as appropriate.

Option	Description
Secondary	Use this setting if a primary HART host such as a DCS is on the network.
Primary	Use this setting if no other primary host is on the network. A field communicator is a secondary host.

8. Click **Connect**.

Need help?
If an error message appears:

- Verify the HART® address of the transmitter, or poll HART addresses 1–15.
- When the transmitter is in a fault, you may need to add additional resistance in the loop to achieve HART communications.
- Ensure that you have specified the correct port on your PC.
- Check the wiring between the PC and the transmitter.
- Ensure that there is no conflict with another HART master. If any other host (DCS or PLC) is connected to the mA output, temporarily disconnect the DCS or PLC wiring.
- For long-distance communication, or if noise from an external source interferes with the signal, install 120-Ω ½-W terminating resistors in parallel with the output at both ends of the communication segment.

B.2.5 Make a HART/Bell 202 connection from ProLink III to the transmitter

This connection type uses HART protocol and commands to communicate with the transmitter over a Bell 202 physical layer. You can connect directly to the Channel A terminals on the transmitter, to any point in a local HART loop, or to any point in a HART multidrop network.

Prerequisites

- Channel A activated on the transmitter
- Installation kit

Procedure

1. Attach the signal converter to the serial port or USB port on your PC.
2. To connect directly to the transmitter terminals:

   WARNING
   If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

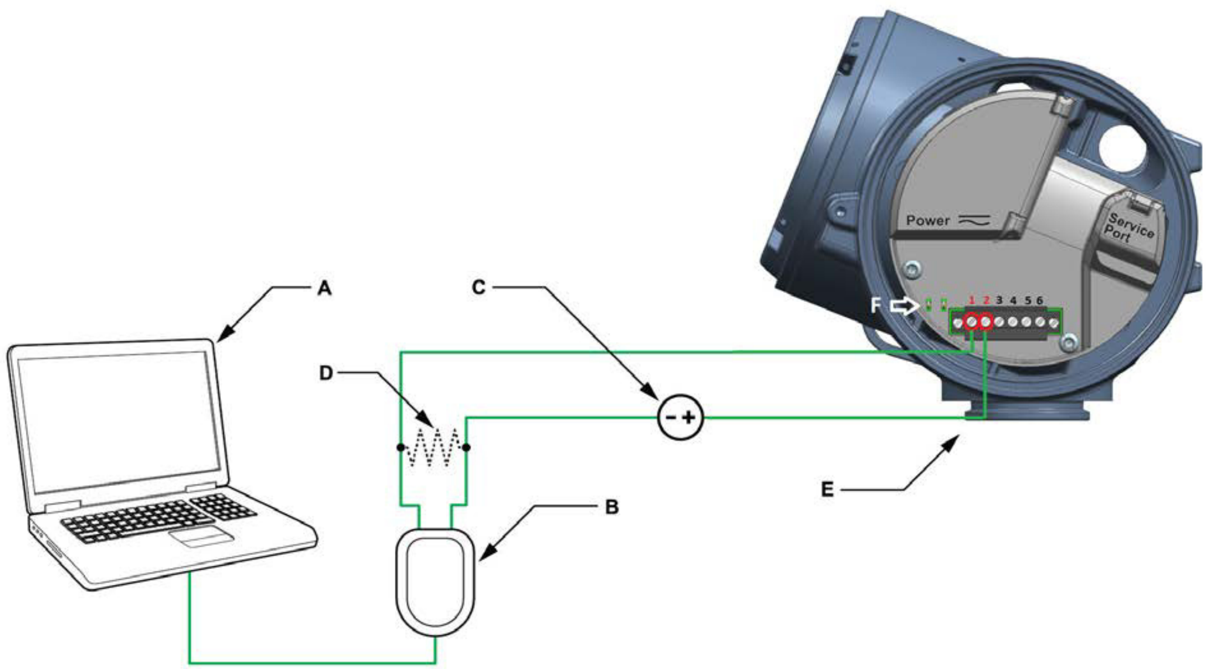
   a) Open the transmitter wiring compartment.
   b) Connect the leads from the signal converter to terminals 1 and 2 on the transmitter, or to the HART connection posts.

      Tip
      HART connections are not polarity-sensitive. It does not matter which lead you attach to which terminal.

   c) Add resistance as necessary to achieve at least one volt across the connection points.

      Important
      HART®/Bell 202 connections require a voltage drop of 1 VDC. To achieve this, add resistance of 250–600 Ω to the connection.

Figure B-6: Connection to mA Output terminals

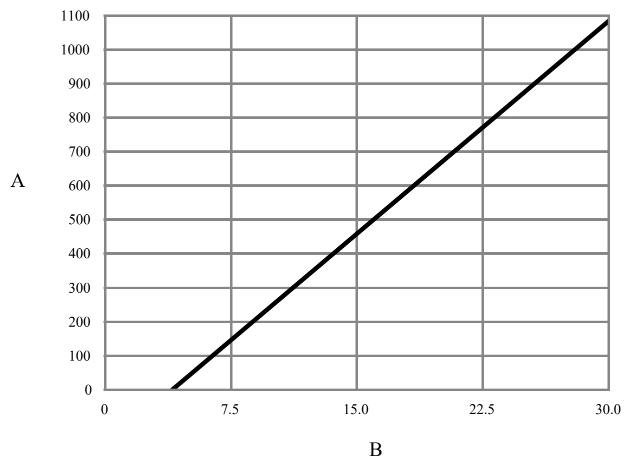


A. PC
B. RS-232 to Bell 202 converter
C. External power supply, if required
D. 250–600 Ω resistance
E. Transmitter with end-cap removed
F. HART® connection posts

Note
This figure shows a serial port connection. USB connections are also supported.

The signal converter must be connected across a resistance of 250–600 Ω. The mA output requires an external power supply with a minimum of 250 Ω and 17.5 V. See the following figure to help determine the appropriate combination of voltage and resistance. Note that many PLCs have a built-in 250-Ω resistor. If the PLC is powering the circuit, be sure to take this into consideration.

Figure B-7: Externally-powered mA/HART output: maximum loop resistance

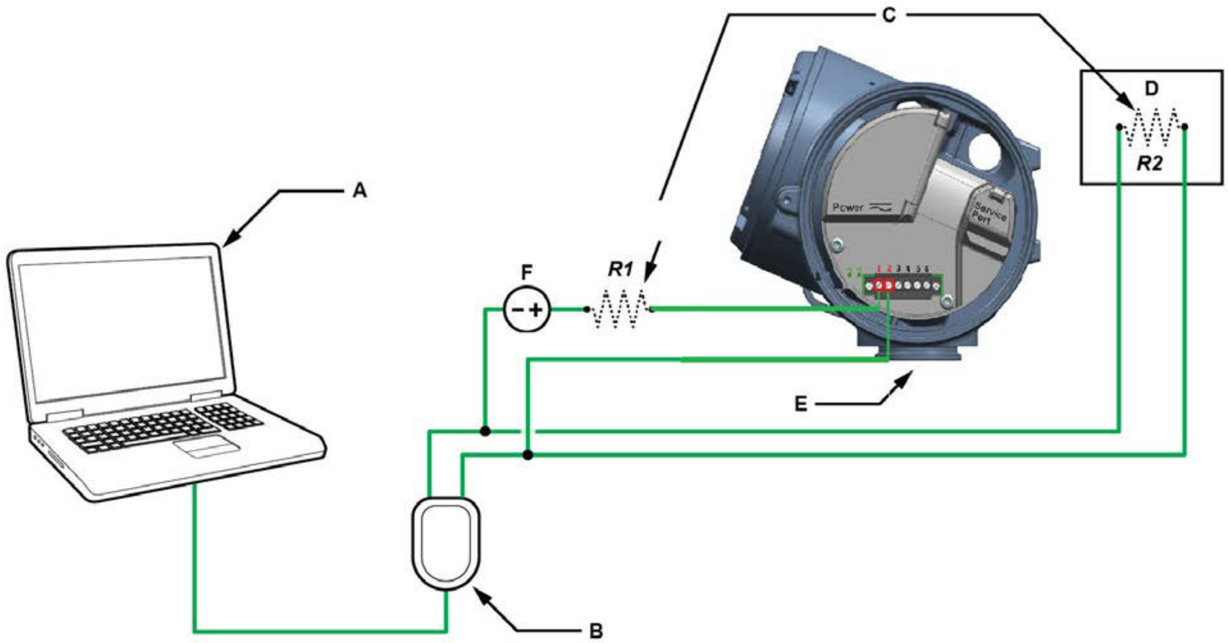


A. Maximum resistance (Ω)
B. External supply voltage (V)

3. To connect to a point in the local HART loop:
    a) Attach the leads from the signal converter to any point in the loop, ensuring that the leads are across the resistor.
    b) Add resistance as necessary to achieve at least one volt across the connection points.

    Important
    HART®/Bell 202 connections require a voltage drop of 1 VDC. To achieve this, add resistance of 250–600 Ω to the connection.

Figure B-8: Connection over local loop

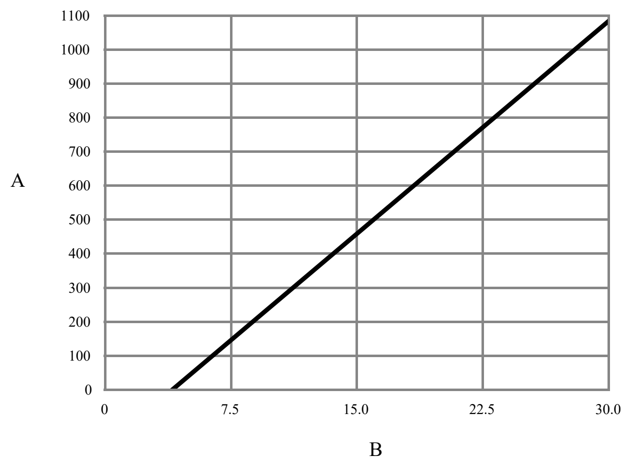


A. *PC*
B. *RS-232 to Bell 202 converter*
C. *Any combination of resistors R1 and R2 as necessary to meet HART® communication resistance requirements*
D. *DCS or PLC*
E. *Transmitter with end-cap removed*
F. *External power supply, if required*

Note
This figure shows a serial port connection. USB connections are also supported.

The signal converter must be connected across a resistance of 250–600 Ω. The mA output requires an external power supply with a minimum of 250 Ω and 11 V. See the following figure to help determine the appropriate combination of voltage and resistance. To meet the resistance requirements, you may use any combination of resistors R1 and R2. Note that many PLCs have a built-in 250-Ω resistor. If the PLC is powering the circuit, be sure to take this into consideration.

Figure B-9: Externally-powered mA/HART output: maximum loop resistance

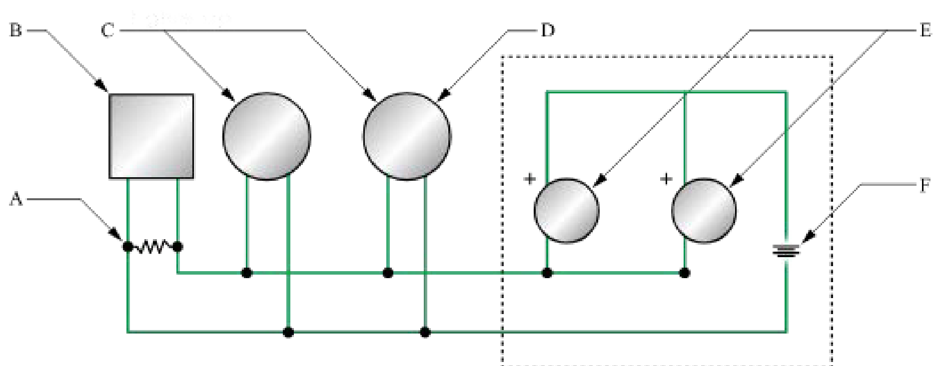


A. Maximum resistance (Ω)
B. External supply voltage (V)

4. To connect over a HART® multidrop network:
   a) Attach the leads from the signal converter to any point on the network.
   b) Add resistance as necessary to achieve at least one volt across the connection points.

   Important
   HART®/Bell 202 connections require a voltage drop of 1 VDC. To achieve this, add resistance of 250–600 Ω to the connection.

Figure B-10: mA/HART multidrop wiring



A. 250–600 Ω resistance
B. HART-compatible host or controller
C. HART-compatible transmitter (internally powered)
D. Micro Motion 4700 transmitter (internally powered) mA/HART connections
E. SMART FAMILY™ transmitters
F. 24 VDC loop power supply required for external transmitter

5. Start ProLink III.

6. Choose **Connect to Physical Device**.
7. Set **Protocol** to **HART Bell 202**.

   Tip
   HART/Bell 202 connections use standard connection parameters. You do not need to configure them here.

8. If you are using a USB signal converter, enable **Toggle RTS**.
9. Set **Address/Tag** to the HART polling address configured in the transmitter.

   Tip
   - If this is the first time you are connecting to the transmitter, use the default address: 0.
   - If you are not in a HART multidrop environment, the HART polling address is typically left at the default value.
   - If you are unsure of the transmitter address, click **Poll**. The program will search the network and return a list of the transmitters that it detects.

10. Set the **PC Port** value to the PC COM port that you are using for this connection.
11. Set **Master** as appropriate.

Option	Description
Secondary	Use this setting if a primary HART host such as a DCS is on the network.
Primary	Use this setting if no other primary host is on the network. A field communicator is a secondary host.

12. Select **Connect**.

   Need help?
   If an error message appears:
   - Verify the HART® address of the transmitter, or poll HART addresses 1–15.
   - Ensure that you have specified the correct port on your PC.
   - Check the wiring between the PC and the transmitter.
   - If the channel is configured for external power, ensure that the mA output is powered.
   - Increase or decrease resistance.
   - Disable burst mode.
   - Ensure that the resistor is installed correctly. If the mA output is internally powered (active), the resistor must be installed in parallel. If the mA output is externally powered (passive), the resistor must be installed in series.
   - Ensure that there is no conflict with another HART master. If any other host (DCS or PLC) is connected to the mA output, temporarily disconnect the DCS or PLC wiring.

C Using a field communicator with the transmitter

C.1 Basic information about field communicators

A field communicator is a handheld configuration and management tool that can be used with a variety of devices, including Micro Motion transmitters. It provides complete access to transmitter functions and data.

Field communicator documentation

Most of the instructions in this manual assume that you are already familiar with field communicators and can perform the following tasks:

- Turn on the field communicator
- Navigate the field communicator menus
- Establish communication with HART®-compatible devices
- Send configuration data to the device
- Use the alpha keys to enter information

Device descriptions (DDs)

In order for the field communicator to work with your device, the appropriate device description (DD) must be installed. Make sure that the DD version matches the transmitter version.

To view the device descriptions that are installed on your field communicator:

Type of field communicator	Procedure
475 handheld communicator	1. At the HART application menu, press **Utility** → **Available Device Descriptions**. 2. Scroll the list of manufacturers and select **Micro Motion**, then scroll the list of installed device descriptions.
AMS TREX	1. In the field communicator, tap HART Offline on the **Connect** → **Select** screen. 2. Tap **Simulate** → **Device manufacturer** → **Device type**. 3. Select the device revision and the device description revision.

If **Micro Motion** is not listed, or you do not see the required device description, use the field communicator's upgrade utility to install the device description or contact customer support.

Field communicator menus and messages

As you use a field communicator with a Micro Motion transmitter, you will see a number of messages and notes. This manual does not document all of these messages and notes.

Important
The user is responsible for responding to messages and notes and complying with all safety messages.

C.2 Connect with a field communicator

A connection from a field communicator to your transmitter allows you to read process data, configure the transmitter, and perform maintenance and troubleshooting tasks.

Prerequisites

The following HART device description (DD) must be installed on the field communicator : 4700 Dev v1 DD V1 or later.

WARNING

If the transmitter is in a hazardous area, do not remove the housing cover while the transmitter is powered up. Failure to follow these instructions can cause an explosion resulting in injury or death.

Important

If the HART security switch is set to **ON**, HART protocol cannot be used to perform any action that requires writing to the transmitter. For example, you cannot change the configuration, reset totalizers, or perform calibration using a field communicator with a HART connection. When the HART security switch is set to **OFF**, no functions are disabled.

Procedure

1. To connect to a point in the local HART loop, attach the leads from the field communicator to any point in the loop and add resistance as necessary.

   The field communicator must be connected across a resistance of 250–600 Ω.

2. To connect to a point in the HART multidrop network, attach the leads from the field communicator to any point on the network.
3. Turn on the field communicator and wait until the main menu is displayed.
4. If you are connecting across a multidrop network:
   - Set the field communicator to poll. The device returns all valid addresses.
   - Enter the HART address of the transmitter. The default HART address is 0. However, in a multidrop network, the HART address has probably been set to a different, unique value.

Postrequisites

To navigate to the ***Online*** menu, choose **HART Application** → **Online**. Most configuration, maintenance, and troubleshooting tasks are performed from the ***Online*** menu.

Tip

You may see messages related to the DD or active alerts. Press the appropriate buttons to ignore the message and continue.

Need help?

A field communicator requires a minimum of 1 VDC across the connection leads to communicate. If necessary, increase the resistance at the connection point until 1 VDC is achieved.

D View Spectrum approvals

Spectrum management promotes and regulates the efficient use of radio frequencies. Use this section to view the spectrum approvals for this device.

Display	**Menu → About → Spectrum Approvals**

Note
Spectrum approvals can only be viewed using the display. Spectrum approvals are listed in the *Micro Motion 4700 Configurable Inputs and Outputs Transmitter Product Data Sheet*.

E Channel combinations

E.1 Rules for channel combinations

Use these rules to determine what channel types and channel combinations are valid on the transmitter.

Rule number	Rule
1	Channel A can be either 4-20mA, HART, Frequency Output, or Discrete Output.
2	Channel B can be either 4-20mA, Frequency Output, Discrete Output, or Discrete Input.
3	Channel C is always RS-485 (Modbus).

F Concentration measurement matrices

F.1 Standard matrices for the Concentration Measurement application

The standard concentration matrices available from Micro Motion are applicable for a variety of process fluids. These matrices are included in the ProLink III installation folder.

Tip
If the standard matrices are not appropriate for your application, you can build a custom matrix or purchase a custom matrix from Micro Motion.

Matrix name	Description	Density unit	Temperature unit	Derived variable
Deg Balling	Matrix represents percent extract, by mass, in solution, based on °Balling. For example, if a wort is 10 °Balling and the extract in solution is 100% sucrose, the extract is 10% of the total mass.	g/cm^3	°F	Mass Concentration (Density)
Deg Brix	Matrix represents a hydrometer scale for sucrose solutions that indicates the percent by mass of sucrose in solution at a given temperature. For example, 40 kg of sucrose mixed with 60 kg of water results in a 40 °Brix solution.	g/cm^3	°C	Mass Concentration (Density)
Deg Plato	Matrix represents percent extract, by mass, in solution, based on °Plato. For example, if a wort is 10 °Plato and the extract in solution is 100% sucrose, the extract is 10% of the total mass.	g/cm^3	°F	Mass Concentration (Density)
HFCS 42	Matrix represents a hydrometer scale for HFCS 42 (high-fructose corn syrup) solutions that indicates the percent by mass of HFCS in solution.	g/cm^3	°C	Mass Concentration (Density)
HFCS 55	Matrix represents a hydrometer scale for HFCS 55 (high-fructose corn syrup) solutions that indicates the percent by mass of HFCS in solution.	g/cm^3	°C	Mass Concentration (Density)
HFCS 90	Matrix represents a hydrometer scale for HFCS 90 (high-fructose corn syrup) solutions that indicates the percent by mass of HFCS in solution.	g/cm^3	°C	Mass Concentration (Density)

F.2 Derived variables and calculated process variables

The Concentration Measurement application calculates a different set of process variables from each derived variable. The process variables are then available for viewing or reporting.

Derived variable	Description	Calculated process variables					
		Density at reference temp	**Standard volume flow rate**	**Specific gravity**	**Concentra-tion**	**Net mass flow rate**	**Net volume flow rate**
Density at Reference	Mass/unit volume, corrected to a given reference temperature	✓	✓				
Specific Gravity	The ratio of the density of a process fluid at a given temperature to the density of water at a given temperature **Note** The two given temperature conditions do not need to be the same.	✓	✓	✓			
Mass Concentration (Density)	The percent mass of solute or of material in suspension in the total solution, derived from reference density	✓	✓		✓	✓	
Mass Concentration (Specific Gravity)	The percent mass of solute or of material in suspension in the total solution, derived from specific gravity	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓	
Volume Concentration (Density)	The percent volume of solute or of material in suspension in the total solution, derived from reference density	✓	✓		✓		✓
Volume Concentration (Specific Gravity)	The percent volume of solute or of material in suspension in the total solution, derived from specific gravity	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓
Concentration (Density)	The mass, volume, weight, or number of moles of solute or of material in suspension in proportion to the total solution, derived from reference density	✓	✓		✓		
Concentration (Specific Gravity)	The mass, volume, weight, or number of moles of solute or of material in suspension in proportion to the total solution, derived from specific gravity	✓	✓	✓	✓		

G Environmental compliance

G.1 RoHS and WEEE

In compliance with the RoHS directive (Restriction of Hazardous Substances) and the WEEE directive (Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment), the battery in the Micro Motion 4700 Transmitter cannot be serviced or replaced by users. If the battery requires replacement, contact customer service for replacement and disposal.

MS-00809-0100-5710
Rev. AA
2023

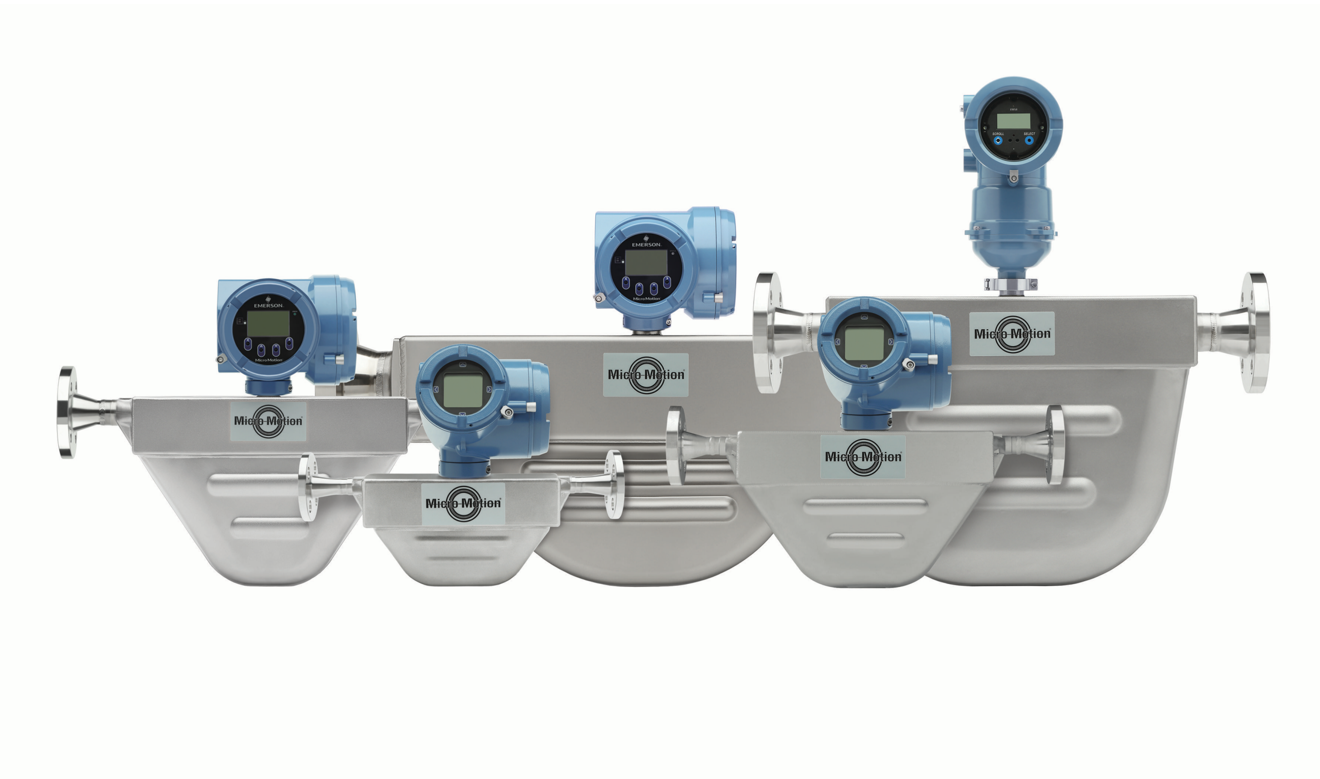
For more information: **Emerson.com**

MICRO MOTION™

EMERSON™

Installation Manual
20002298, Rev CG
January 2019

Micro Motion® F-Series Coriolis Flow and Density Sensors



MICRO MOTION™

EMERSON™

Safety and approval information

This Micro Motion product complies with all applicable European directives when properly installed in accordance with the instructions in this manual. Refer to the EU declaration of conformity for directives that apply to this product. The EU declaration of conformity, with all applicable European directives, and the complete ATEX Installation Drawings and Instructions are available on the internet at www.emerson.com or through your local Micro Motion support center.

Information affixed to equipment that complies with the Pressure Equipment Directive, can be found on the internet at www.emerson.com.

For hazardous installations in Europe, refer to standard EN 60079-14 if national standards do not apply.

Other information

Full product specifications can be found in the product data sheet. Troubleshooting information can be found in the configuration manual. Product data sheets and manuals are available from the Micro Motion web site at www.emerson.com.

Return policy

Follow Micro Motion procedures when returning equipment. These procedures ensure legal compliance with government transportation agencies and help provide a safe working environment for Micro Motion employees. Micro Motion will not accept your returned equipment if you fail to follow Micro Motion procedures.

Return procedures and forms are available on our web support site at www.emerson.com, or by phoning the Micro Motion Customer Service department.

Emerson Flow customer service

Email:

- Worldwide: flow.support@emerson.com
- Asia-Pacific: APflow.support@emerson.com

Telephone:

North and South America		Europe and Middle East		Asia Pacific	
United States	800-522-6277	U.K.	0870 240 1978	Australia	800 158 727
Canada	+1 303-527-5200	The Netherlands	+31 (0) 704 136 666	New Zealand	099 128 804
Mexico	+41 (0) 41 7686 111	France	0800 917 901	India	800 440 1468
Argentina	+54 11 4837 7000	Germany	0800 182 5347	Pakistan	888 550 2682
Brazil	+55 15 3413 8000	Italy	8008 77334	China	+86 21 2892 9000
		Central & Eastern	+41 (0) 41 7686 111	Japan	+81 3 5769 6803
		Russia/CIS	+7 495 981 9811	South Korea	+82 2 3438 4600
		Egypt	0800 000 0015	Singapore	+65 6 777 8211
		Oman	800 70101	Thailand	001 800 441 6426
		Qatar	431 0044	Malaysia	800 814 008
		Kuwait	663 299 01		
		South Africa	800 991 390		
		Saudi Arabia	800 844 9564		
		UAE	800 0444 0684		

Contents

1 Planning

1.1 Installation checklist

☐ Make sure that the hazardous area specified on the approval tag is suitable for the environment in which the meter will be installed.

☐ Verify that the local ambient and process temperatures are within the limits of the meter.

☐ If your sensor has an integral transmitter, no wiring is required between the sensor and transmitter. Follow the wiring instructions in the transmitter installation manual for signal and power wiring.

☐ If your transmitter has remote-mounted electronics, follow the instructions in this manual for wiring between the sensor and the transmitter, and then follow the instructions in the transmitter installation manual for power and signal wiring.

Table 1-1: Maximum cable lengths

Cable type	To transmitter	Maximum length
Micro Motion 9-wire	9739 MVD transmitter	1,000 ft (305 m)
	All other MVD transmitters	60 ft (18 m)
Micro Motion 4-wire	All 4-wire MVD transmitters	— 1,000 ft (305 m) without Ex-approval — 500 ft (152 m) with IIC rated sensors — 1,000 ft (305 m) with IIB rated sensors

Table 1-2: Maximum lengths for user-supplied 4-wire cable

Wire function	Wire size	Maximum length
Power (VDC)	22 AWG (0.326 mm²)	300 ft (91 m)
	20 AWG (0.518 mm²)	500NaN ft (NaN m)
	18 AWG (0.823 mm²)	1,000 ft (305 m)
Signal (RS-485)	22 AWG (0.326 mm²) or larger	1,000 ft (305 m)

☐ For optimal performance, install the sensor in the preferred orientation. The sensor will work in any orientation as long as the flow tubes remain full of process fluid.

Table 1-3: Preferred sensor orientation

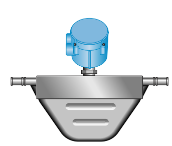
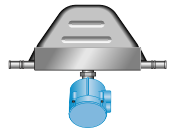
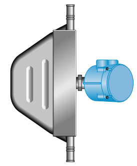
Liquids	

Table 1-3: Preferred sensor orientation *(continued)*

Gases	
Slurries and self-draining applications	

☐ Install the meter so that the flow direction arrow on the sensor case matches the actual forward flow of the process. (Flow direction is also software-selectable.)

1.2 Best practices

The following information can help you get the most from your sensor.

- There are no pipe run requirements for Micro Motion sensors. Straight runs of pipe upstream or downstream are unnecessary.
- If the sensor is installed in a vertical pipeline, liquids and slurries should flow upward through the sensor. Gases should flow downward.
- Keep the sensor tubes full of process fluid.
- For halting flow through the sensor with a single valve, install the valve downstream from the sensor.
- Minimize bending and torsional stress on the meter. Do not use the meter to align misaligned piping.
- The sensor does not require external supports. The flanges will support the sensor in any orientation.

1.3 Temperature limits

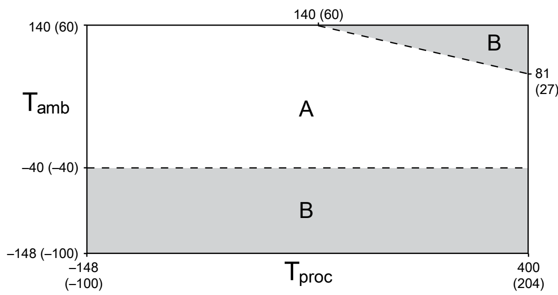
Sensors can be used in the process and ambient temperature ranges shown in the temperature limit graphs. For the purposes of selecting electronics options, temperature limit graphs should be used only as a general guide. If your process conditions are close to the gray area, consult with your Micro Motion representative.

Note

- In all cases, the electronics cannot be operated where the ambient temperature is below -40 °F (-40.0 °C) or above 140 °F (60.0 °C). If a sensor is to be used where the ambient temperature is outside of the range permissible for the electronics, the electronics must be remotely located where the ambient temperature is within the permissible range, as indicated by the shaded areas of the temperature limit graphs.
- Temperature limits may be further restricted by hazardous area approvals. Refer to the hazardous area approvals documentation shipped with the sensor or available from the Micro Motion web site (www.emerson.com/flowmeasurement).

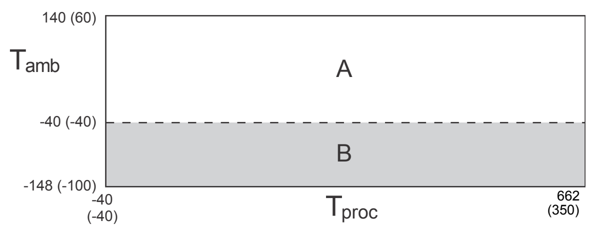
- The extended-mount electronics option allows the sensor case to be insulated without covering the transmitter, core processor, or junction box, but does not affect temperature ratings. When insulating the sensor case at elevated process temperatures (above 140 °F (60.0 °C)), please ensure electronics are not enclosed in insulation as this may lead to electronics failure.

Ambient and process temperature limits for standard-temperature models: 316L stainless steel (S), nickel alloy C22 (H), and high pressure (P)



T_{amb} = Ambient temperature °F (°C)
T_{proc} = Process temperature °F (°C)
A = All available electronic options
B = Remote mount electronics only

Ambient and process temperature limits for high-temperature models: 316L stainless steel (A), nickel alloy C22 (B)



T_{amb} = Ambient temperature °F (°C)
T_{proc} = Process temperature °F (°C)
A = All available electronic options
B = Remote mount electronics only

2 Mounting

2.1 Mount the sensor

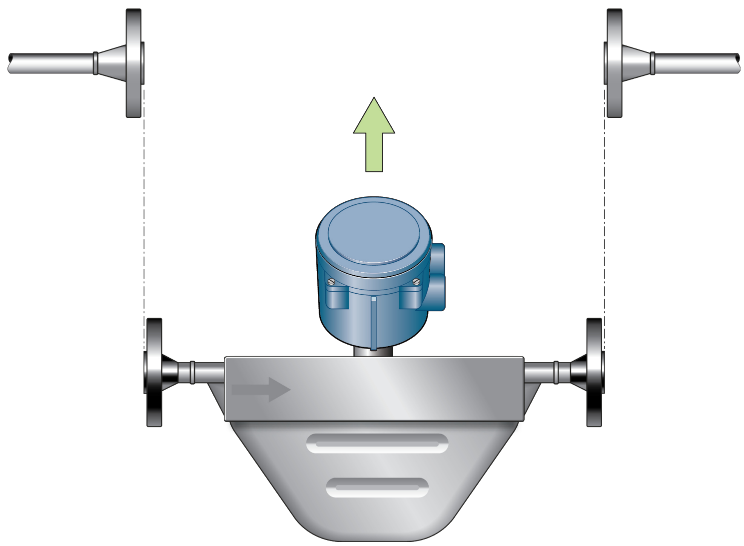
Use your common practices to minimize torque and bending load on process connections.

About this task

Tip
To reduce the risk of condensation problems, do not orient transmitters or sensor junction boxes with their conduit openings pointing upward.

CAUTION
Do not lift the sensor by the electronics or purge connections. Lifting the sensor by the electronics or purge connections can damage the device.

Figure 2-1: Mounting the sensor



Notes
- Do not use the sensor to support the piping.
- The sensor does not require external supports. The flanges will support the sensor in any orientation.

2.2 Attach extended electronics

If your installation has a sensor with extended electronics, you will need to install the extender onto the sensor case.

About this task

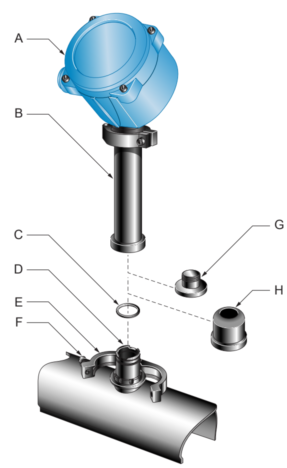
Note
Extended core processors are matched at the factory to specific sensors. Keep each core processor together with the sensor with which it was shipped.

CAUTION
Keep the extender and feedthrough clean and dry. Moisture or debris in the extender or feedthrough can damage electronics and result in measurement error or flowmeter failure.

Procedure

1. Remove and recycle the plastic cap from the feedthrough on the sensor.

Figure 2-2: Feedthrough and extender components



A. Transmitter or core processor
B. Extender
C. O-ring
D. Feedthrough
E. Clamping ring
F. Clamping screw
G. Plastic plug
H. Plastic cap

2. Loosen the clamping screw and remove the clamping ring. Leave the O-ring in place on the feedthrough.
3. Remove and recycle the plastic plug from the extender.

4. Fit the extender onto the feedthrough by carefully aligning the notches on the bottom of the extender with the notches on the feedthrough.
5. Close the clamping ring and tighten the clamping screw to 13 in lbf (1.47 N m) to 18 in lbf (2.03 N m).

3 Wiring

3.1 Options for wiring

The wiring procedure you follow depends on which electronics option you have.

Table 3-1: Wiring procedures by electronics option

Electronics option	Wiring procedure
Integral transmitter	The transmitter is already connected to the sensor. No wiring is required between sensor and transmitter. See the transmitter installation manual for wiring the power and signal cable to the transmitter.
Extended electronics	The electronics are separated from the sensor by an extender and must be attached as described in Attach extended electronics. There is no wiring required because the physical connection includes the electrical connection.
MVD™ Direct Connect™	There is no transmitter to wire. See the *Micro Motion MVD Direct Connect Meters* manual for wiring the power and signal cable between the sensor and the direct host.
Integral core processor with remote transmitter	The core processor is already connected to the sensor. Connect a 4-wire cable between the core processor and transmitter. Refer to Connect 4-wire cable.
Remote core processor attached to transmitter	Connect a 9-wire cable between the sensor and the transmitter/core processor. Refer to Connect the 9-wire cable , as well as the Micro Motion *Micro Motion 9-Wire Flowmeter Cable Preparation and Installation Guide*.
Remote core processor separate from transmitter – *double-hop*	• Connect a 4-wire cable between the core processor and transmitter. Refer to Connect 4-wire cable. • Connect a 9-wire cable between the sensor and the core processor. Refer to Connect the 9-wire cable , as well as the Micro Motion *Micro Motion 9-Wire Flowmeter Cable Preparation and Installation Guide*

DANGER

Make sure the hazardous area specified on the sensor approval tag is suitable for the environment in which the sensor will be installed. Failure to comply with the requirements for intrinsic safety in a hazardous area could result in an explosion.

CAUTION

Fully close and tighten all housing covers and conduit openings. Improperly sealed housings can expose electronics to moisture, which can cause measurement error or flowmeter failure. Inspect and grease all gaskets and O-rings.

3.2 Connect 4-wire cable

3.2.1 4-wire cable types and usage

Micro Motion offers two types of 4-wire cable: shielded and armored. Both types contain shield drain wires.

The cable supplied by Micro Motion consists of one pair of red and black 18 AWG (0.823 mm^2) wires for the VDC connection, and one pair of white and green 22 AWG (0.326 mm^2) wires for the RS-485 connection.

User-supplied cable must meet the following requirements:

- Twisted pair construction.
- Applicable hazardous area requirements, if the core processor is installed in a hazardous area.
- Wire gauge appropriate for the cable length between the core processor and the transmitter, or the host.

Table 3-2: Wire gauge

Wire gauge	Maximum cable length
VDC 22 AWG (0.326 mm^2)	300 ft (91 m)
VDC 20 AWG (0.518 mm^2)	500 ft (152 m)
VDC 18 AWG (0.823 mm^2)	1,000 ft (305 m)
RS-485 22 AWG (0.326 mm^2) or larger	1,000 ft (305 m)

3.2.2 Prepare a cable with a metal conduit

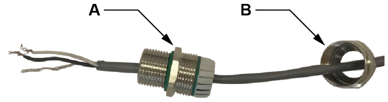
Procedure

1. Remove the core processor cover using a flat-blade screw driver.
2. Run the conduit to the sensor.
3. Pull the cable through the conduit.
4. Cut the drain wires and let them float at both ends of the conduit.

3.2.3 Prepare a cable with user-supplied cable glands

Procedure

1. Remove the core processor cover using a flat-blade screw driver.
2. Pass the wires through the gland nut and gland body.



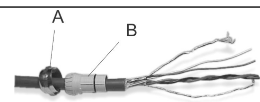
A. Gland body
B. Gland nut

3. Terminate the RS-485 shield and drain wires to the housing internal grounding screw.
4. Assemble the gland according to vendor instructions.

3.2.4 Prepare a cable with Micro Motion-supplied cable glands

Procedure

1. Remove the core processor cover using a flat-blade screw driver.
2. Pass the wires through the gland nut and clamping insert.



A. Gland nut
B. Clamping insert

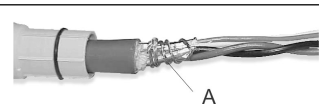
3. Strip the cable jacket.

Option	Description
NPT gland type	Strip 4.5 in (114 mm)
M20 gland type	Strip 4.25 in (108 mm)

4. Remove the clear wrap and filler material.
5. Strip most of the shielding.

Option	Description
NPT gland type	Strip all but 0.75 in (19 mm)
M20 gland type	Strip all but 0.5 in (13 mm)

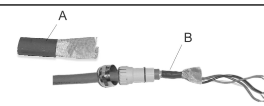
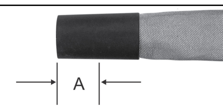
6. Wrap the drain wires twice around the shield and cut off the excess drain wires.



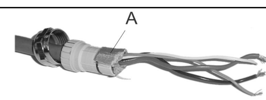
A. Drain wires wrapped around shield

7. For foil (shielded cable) only:

> **Note**
> For braided (armored cable) skip this step and contine to the next step.

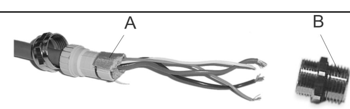
Option	Description
NPT gland type	a. Slide the shielded heat shrink over the drain wires. Ensure that the wires are completely covered. b. Apply 250 °F (121.1 °C) heat to shrink the tubing. Do not burn the cable. c. Position the clamping insert so the interior end is flush with the braid of the heat shrink.  *A. Shielded heat shrink* *B. After heat is applied*
M20 gland type	Trim 0.3 in (8 mm).  *A. Trim*

8. Assemble the gland by folding the shield or braid back over the clamping insert and 0.125 in (3 mm) past the O-ring.



A. Shield folded back

9. Install the gland body into the conduit opening on the core processor housing.
10. Insert the wires through the gland body and tighten the gland nut onto the gland body.



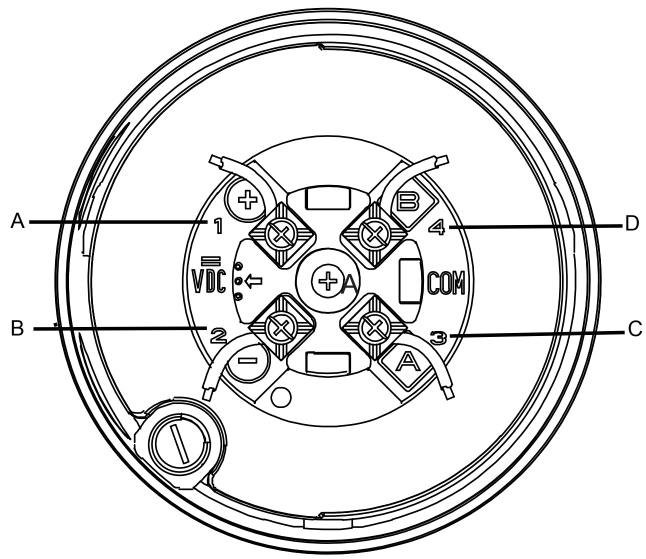
A. Shield folded back
B. Gland body

3.2.5 Connect the wires to the core processor terminals

After the 4-wire cable has been prepared and shielded (if required), connect the individual wires of the 4-wire cable to the terminals on the core processor.

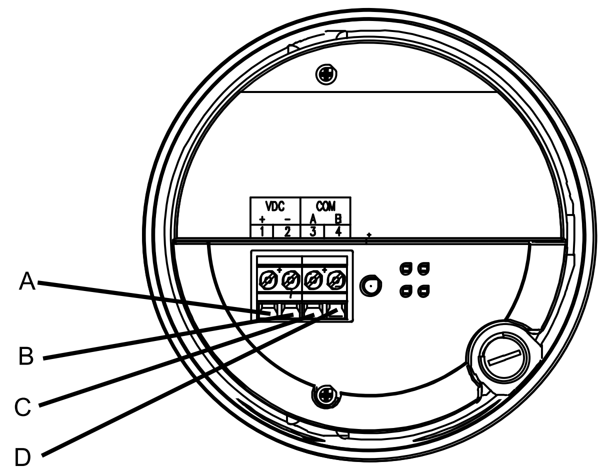
Procedure

1. Connect the wires to the core processor terminals.
   - If you are connecting to a standard core processor, use the following image and connections:



A. Terminal 1 (Power supply +): Red wire
B. Terminal 2 (Power supply -): Black wire
C. Terminal 3 (RS-485/A): White wire
D. Terminal 4 (RS-485/B): Green wire

- If you are connecting to an enhanced core processor, use the following image and connections:



A. Terminal 1 (Power supply +): Red wire
B. Terminal 2 (Power supply -): Black wire
C. Terminal 3 (RS-485/A): White wire
D. Terminal 4 (RS-485/B): Green wire

2. Reinstall the core processor cover.
3. Torque the cover screws to:
   - 10 in lbf (1.13 N m) to 13 in lbf (1.47 N m) for an aluminum housing
   - minimum 19 in lbf (2.15 N m) for a stainless steel housing

   If properly seated, there will be no gap between cover and base.
4. Connect the wires to the transmitter terminals using the transmitter installation manual.

3.3 Connect the 9-wire cable

Procedure

1. Prepare and install the cable according to the instructions in the *Micro Motion 9-Wire Flowmeter Cable Preparation and Installation Guide*.
2. Insert the stripped ends of the individual wires into the terminal blocks of the junction box. Ensure that no bare wires remain exposed.
3. Match the wires color for color. For wiring at the transmitter or remote core processor, refer to the transmitter documentation.
4. Tighten the screws to hold the wires in place.

5. Ensure integrity of gaskets, then tightly close and seal the junction box cover and all housing covers.
6. Refer to the transmitter installation manual for signal and power wiring instructions.

4 Grounding

The meter must be grounded according to the standards that are applicable at the site. The customer is responsible for knowing and complying with all applicable standards.

Prerequisites

Use the following guides for grounding practices:

- In Europe, IEC 79-14 is applicable to most installations, in particular Sections 12.2.2.3 and 12.2.2.4.
- In the U.S.A. and Canada, ISA 12.06.01 Part 1 provides examples with associated applications and requirements.

If no external standards are applicable, follow these guidelines to ground the sensor:

- Use copper wire, 14 AWG (2.08 mm^2) or larger wire size.
- Keep all ground leads as short as possible, less than 1 Ω impedance.
- Connect ground leads directly to earth, or follow plant standards.

CAUTION

Ground the flowmeter to earth, or follow ground network requirements for the facility. Improper grounding can cause measurement error.

Procedure

- Check the joints in the pipeline.
  - If the joints in the pipeline are ground-bonded, the sensor is automatically grounded and no further action is necessary (unless required by local code).
  - If the joints in the pipeline are not grounded, connect a ground wire to the grounding screw located on the sensor electronics.

  Tip
  The sensor electronics may be a transmitter, core processor, or junction box. The grounding screw may be internal or external.

5 Supplementary information

5.1 Purge the sensor case

Prerequisites

Make sure the following are available before beginning the purge procedure:

- Teflon™ tape
- Argon or nitrogen gas sufficient to purge the sensor case

About this task

Whenever a purge plug is removed from the sensor case, you must repurge the case.

Procedure

1. Shut down the process, or set control devices for manual operation. Before performing the case purging procedure, shut down the process or set the control devices for manual operation. Performing the purge procedure while the flowmeter is operating could affect measurement accuracy, resulting in inaccurate flow signals.
2. Remove both purge plugs from the sensor case. If purge lines are being used, open the valve in the purge lines.

   DANGER
   - **Stay clear of the rupture disk pressure relief area. High-pressure fluid escaping from the sensor can cause severe injury or death. The sensor must be oriented so that personnel and equipment will not be exposed to any discharge along the pressure relief path.**
   - **Take all necessary precautions when removing purge plugs. Removing a purge plug compromises the secondary containment of the sensor and could expose the user to process fluid.**
   - **Improper pressurization of the sensor case could result in personal injury.**

   CAUTION
   Be sure to use thread protectors when removing the purge fitting so as not to damage the disk membrane surrounding the rupture disk.

3. Prepare the purge plugs for reinstallation by wrapping them with 2–3 turns of Teflon tape.
4. Connect the supply of nitrogen or argon gas to the inlet purge connection or open inlet purge line. Leave the outlet connection open.
   - Exercise caution to avoid introducing dirt, moisture, rust, or other contaminants into the sensor case.
   - If the purge gas is heavier than air (such as argon), locate the inlet lower than the outlet, so that the purge gas will displace air from bottom to top.

- If the purge gas is lighter than air (such as nitrogen), locate the inlet higher than the outlet, so that the purge gas will displace air from top to bottom.

5. Make sure that there is a tight seal between the inlet connection and sensor case, so that air cannot be drawn by suction into the case or purge line during the purging process.
6. Run purge gas through the sensor.

   The purge time is the amount of time required for full exchange of atmosphere to inert gas. The larger the line size, the greater amount of time is required to purge the case. If purge lines are being used, increase the purge time to fill the additional volume of the purge line.

   Note
   Keep the purge gas pressure below 7.25 psi (0.5 bar).

Table 5-1: Purge time

Sensor model	Purge rate	Time, in minutes
F025	20 ft3/h (566.3 l/h)	4 1/2
F050	20 ft3/h (566.3 l/h)	4 1/2
F100	20 ft3/h (566.3 l/h)	6
F200	20 ft3/h (566.3 l/h)	15
F300	20 ft3/h (566.3 l/h)	25

7. At the appropriate time, shut off the gas supply, then immediately seal the purge outlet and inlet connections with the purge plugs.

   Avoid pressurizing the sensor case. If pressure inside the case elevates above atmospheric pressure during operation, the flowmeter density calibration will be inaccurate.
8. Make sure that the purge fitting seals are tight so that air cannot be drawn by suction into the sensor case.

5.2 Pressure relief

F-Series sensors, except high-temperature (base model codes A and B), are available with a rupture disk installed on the case. Rupture disks are meant to vent process fluid from the sensor case in the unlikely event of a flow tube breach. Some users connect a pipeline to the rupture disk to help contain escaping process fluid. For more information about rupture disks, contact Micro Motion Customer Service.

If the sensor has a rupture disk, it should remain installed at all times as it would otherwise be necessary to re-purge the case. If the rupture disk is activated by a tube breach, the seal in the rupture disk will be broken, and the Coriolis meter should be removed from service.

The rupture disk is located as follows on the meter, and the warning sticker shown is placed next to it.

DANGER

Stay clear of the rupture disk pressure relief area. High-pressure fluid escaping from the sensor can cause severe injury or death.

The sensor must be oriented so that personnel and equipment will not be exposed to any discharge along the pressure relief path.

Important

If a rupture disk is used, the housing can no longer assume a secondary containment function.

WARNING

Removing the Purge Fitting, Blind Plug, or Rupture Disks compromises the Ex-i Safety Certification, the Ex-tc Safety Certification, and the IP-rating of the Coriolis meter. Any modification to the Purge Fitting, Blind Plug, or Rupture Disks must maintain a minimum of IP66/IP67 Ratings.

20002298
Rev. CG
2019

Micro Motion Inc. USA
Worldwide Headquarters
7070 Winchester Circle
Boulder, Colorado USA 80301
T +1 303-527-5200
T +1 800-522-6277
F +1 303-530-8459
www.emerson.com

Micro Motion Asia
Emerson Automation Solutions
1 Pandan Crescent
Singapore 128461
Republic of Singapore
T +65 6363-7766
F +65 6770-8003

Micro Motion Europe
Emerson Automation Solutions
Neonstraat 1
6718 WX Ede
The Netherlands
T +31 (0) 70 413 6666
F +31 (0) 318 495 556
www.micromotion.nl

Micro Motion United Kingdom
Emerson Automation Solutions
Emerson Process Management Limited
Horsfield Way
Bredbury Industrial Estate
Stockport SK6 2SU U.K.
T +44 0870 240 1978
F +44 0800 966 181

MICRO MOTION™

EMERSON™